

# Linux Device Drivers

## Linux Device Drivers

This documentation is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License for more details.

You should have received a copy of the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA

For more details see the file COPYING in the source distribution of Linux.

# Table of Contents

<b>1. Driver Basics.....</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1. Driver Entry and Exit points .....	1
module_init .....	1
module_exit.....	1
1.2. Atomic and pointer manipulation .....	2
atomic_read.....	2
atomic_set .....	3
atomic_add.....	4
atomic_sub .....	5
atomic_sub_and_test.....	6
atomic_inc.....	7
atomic_dec .....	7
atomic_dec_and_test.....	8
atomic_inc_and_test .....	9
atomic_add_negative.....	10
atomic_add_return .....	11
atomic_sub_return.....	11
atomic_add_unless.....	12
atomic_inc_short.....	13
atomic_or_long .....	14
1.3. Delaying, scheduling, and timer routines .....	15
struct task_cputime .....	15
struct thread_group_cputimer .....	16
pid_alive.....	17
is_global_init .....	18
wake_up_process .....	19
preempt_notifier_register .....	19
preempt_notifier_unregister .....	20
__wake_up .....	21
__wake_up_sync_key .....	22
complete .....	23
complete_all.....	24
wait_for_completion .....	25
wait_for_completion_timeout.....	26
wait_for_completion_interruptible .....	27
wait_for_completion_interruptible_timeout .....	27
wait_for_completion_killable .....	28
wait_for_completion_killable_timeout.....	29
try_wait_for_completion.....	30
completion_done.....	31
task_nice .....	32

sched_setscheduler.....	32
yield.....	33
yield_to .....	34
DECLARE_COMPLETION .....	35
DECLARE_COMPLETION_ONSTACK.....	36
init_completion .....	37
reinit_completion .....	38
INIT_COMPLETION.....	39
__round_jiffies .....	39
__round_jiffies_relative .....	41
round_jiffies .....	42
round_jiffies_relative .....	43
__round_jiffies_up .....	44
__round_jiffies_up_relative .....	44
round_jiffies_up .....	45
round_jiffies_up_relative .....	46
set_timer_slack .....	47
init_timer_key .....	48
mod_timer_pending .....	49
mod_timer .....	50
mod_timer_pinned .....	51
add_timer .....	52
add_timer_on .....	53
del_timer .....	54
try_to_del_timer_sync .....	55
del_timer_sync.....	56
schedule_timeout .....	57
msleep .....	58
msleep_interruptible .....	59
usleep_range .....	60
1.4. Wait queues and Wake events .....	60
wait_event .....	60
wait_event_timeout.....	61
wait_event_interruptible .....	62
wait_event_interruptible_timeout .....	63
wait_event_interruptible_locked.....	65
wait_event_interruptible_locked_irq .....	66
wait_event_interruptible_exclusive_locked.....	67
wait_event_interruptible_exclusive_locked_irq .....	68
wait_event_interruptible_lock_irq_timeout.....	69
wait_event_killable .....	71
wait_on_bit .....	72
wait_on_bit_lock.....	73

wait_on_atomic_t.....	74
finish_wait.....	75
abort_exclusive_wait.....	76
wake_up_bit.....	77
wake_up_atomic_t.....	78
1.5. High-resolution timers .....	79
ktime_set.....	79
ktime_sub.....	80
ktime_add.....	81
timespec_to_ktime .....	82
timeval_to_ktime .....	83
ktime_to_timespec .....	83
ktime_to_timeval .....	84
ktime_to_ns.....	85
ktime_equal.....	86
ktime_compare.....	86
ktime_after .....	87
ktime_before .....	88
struct hrtimer.....	89
struct hrtimer_sleeper.....	91
struct hrtimer_clock_base .....	91
ktime_add_ns .....	93
ktime_sub_ns .....	94
hrtimer_forward .....	95
hrtimer_start_range_ns .....	96
hrtimer_start.....	97
hrtimer_try_to_cancel .....	98
hrtimer_cancel.....	98
hrtimer_get_remaining.....	99
hrtimer_init .....	100
hrtimer_get_res .....	101
schedule_hrtimeout_range .....	102
schedule_hrtimeout.....	103
1.6. Workqueues and Kevents .....	104
queue_work.....	104
queue_work_on.....	105
queue_delayed_work .....	106
queue_delayed_work_on .....	107
flush_workqueue .....	108
drain_workqueue.....	109
flush_work.....	110
flush_work_sync .....	111
cancel_work_sync.....	112

flush_delayed_work .....	113
flush_delayed_work_sync .....	114
cancel_delayed_work_sync .....	115
schedule_work .....	116
schedule_delayed_work .....	117
schedule_delayed_work_on .....	117
flush_scheduled_work .....	118
execute_in_process_context .....	120
destroy_workqueue .....	121
workqueue_set_max_active .....	122
workqueue_congested .....	123
work_cpu .....	123
work_busy .....	124
work_on_cpu .....	125
1.7. Internal Functions .....	126
reparent_to_kthreadd .....	126
wait_task_stopped .....	127
task_clear_group_stop_trapping .....	129
task_clear_group_stop_pending .....	130
task_participate_group_stop .....	131
do_notify_parent_cldstop .....	132
sys_restart_syscall .....	133
set_current_blocked .....	133
sys_rt_sigprocmask .....	134
sys_rt_sigpending .....	135
do_sigtimedwait .....	136
sys_rt_sigtimedwait .....	137
sys_kill .....	138
sys_tgkill .....	139
sys_tkill .....	140
sys_rt_sigqueueinfo .....	141
sys_sigpending .....	141
sys_sigprocmask .....	142
sys_rt_sigaction .....	143
sys_rt_sigsuspend .....	144
kthread_run .....	145
kthread_should_stop .....	146
kthread_create_on_node .....	147
kthread_bind .....	148
kthread_stop .....	149
kthread_worker_fn .....	150
queue_kthread_work .....	151
flush_kthread_work .....	152

flush_kthread_worker .....	152
1.8. Kernel objects manipulation .....	153
kobject_get_path .....	153
kobject_set_name .....	154
kobject_init .....	155
kobject_add .....	156
kobject_init_and_add .....	158
kobject_rename .....	159
kobject_del .....	160
kobject_get .....	160
kobject_put .....	161
kobject_create_and_add .....	162
kset_register .....	163
kset_unregister .....	164
kset_create_and_add .....	164
1.9. Kernel utility functions .....	165
upper_32_bits .....	166
lower_32_bits .....	166
might_sleep .....	167
trace_printk .....	168
min_not_zero .....	169
clamp .....	170
clamp_t .....	170
clamp_val .....	171
container_of .....	172
BUILD_BUG_ON .....	173
printk .....	174
console_lock .....	176
console_trylock .....	176
console_conditional_schedule .....	177
printk_timed_ratelimit .....	178
kmsg_dump_register .....	179
kmsg_dump_unregister .....	180
panic .....	180
emergency_restart .....	181
kernel_restart .....	182
kernel_halt .....	183
kernel_power_off .....	184
orderly_poweroff .....	185
rcu_read_lock_bh_held .....	185
init_rcu_head_on_stack .....	186
destroy_rcu_head_on_stack .....	187
1.10. Device Resource Management .....	188

devres_alloc .....	188
devres_for_each_res.....	189
devres_free .....	191
devres_add .....	192
devres_find .....	192
devres_get .....	194
devres_remove .....	195
devres_destroy .....	196
devres_open_group .....	197
devres_close_group.....	198
devres_remove_group.....	199
devres_release_group.....	200
devm_kzalloc .....	201
devm_kfree .....	202
<b>2. Device drivers infrastructure .....</b>	<b>205</b>
2.1. The Basic Device Driver-Model Structures .....	205
struct bus_type .....	205
struct device_driver .....	207
struct class.....	209
struct device .....	211
module_driver .....	215
2.2. Device Drivers Base.....	216
driver_for_each_device.....	217
driver_find_device.....	218
driver_create_file .....	219
driver_remove_file .....	219
driver_add_kobj .....	220
get_driver .....	221
put_driver .....	222
driver_register .....	223
driver_unregister .....	223
driver_find.....	224
dev_driver_string .....	225
device_create_file.....	226
device_remove_file .....	227
device_create_bin_file .....	227
device_remove_bin_file .....	228
device_schedule_callback_owner .....	229
device_initialize .....	230
dev_set_name.....	231
device_add .....	232
device_register .....	233
get_device .....	234



put_device .....	235
device_del .....	236
device_unregister .....	237
device_for_each_child .....	237
device_find_child .....	238
__root_device_register .....	240
root_device_unregister .....	241
device_create_vargs .....	241
device_create .....	243
device_destroy .....	244
device_rename .....	245
device_move .....	247
__class_create .....	248
class_destroy .....	249
class_dev_iter_init .....	250
class_dev_iter_next .....	251
class_dev_iter_exit .....	252
class_for_each_device .....	253
class_find_device .....	254
class_compat_register .....	255
class_compat_unregister .....	256
class_compat_create_link .....	256
class_compat_remove_link .....	257
request_firmware .....	258
release_firmware .....	259
request_firmware_nowait .....	260
cache_firmware .....	261
uncache_firmware .....	262
transport_class_register .....	263
transport_class_unregister .....	264
anon_transport_class_register .....	265
anon_transport_class_unregister .....	266
transport_setup_device .....	267
transport_add_device .....	267
transport_configure_device .....	268
transport_remove_device .....	269
transport_destroy_device .....	270
sysdev_driver_register .....	271
sysdev_driver_unregister .....	272
sysdev_register .....	273
platform_device_register_simple .....	273
platform_device_register_data .....	274
platform_get_resource .....	276

platform_get_irq .....	277
platform_get_resource_byname.....	277
platform_get_irq_byname.....	278
platform_add_devices .....	279
platform_device_put .....	280
platform_device_alloc.....	281
platform_device_add_resources.....	281
platform_device_add_data .....	282
platform_device_add.....	283
platform_device_del .....	284
platform_device_register .....	285
platform_device_unregister .....	286
platform_device_register_resndata .....	287
platform_driver_register .....	288
platform_driver_unregister .....	289
platform_driver_probe .....	289
platform_create_bundle .....	290
bus_for_each_dev .....	292
bus_find_device .....	293
bus_find_device_by_name.....	294
bus_for_each_drv.....	295
bus_rescan_devices.....	296
device_reprobe .....	297
bus_register .....	298
bus_unregister .....	299
2.3. Device Drivers Power Management .....	300
dpm_resume_noirq .....	300
dpm_resume_end .....	301
dpm_suspend_noirq .....	302
dpm_suspend_start.....	302
device_pm_wait_for_dev .....	303
dpm_for_each_dev.....	304
2.4. Device Drivers ACPI Support.....	305
acpi_bus_register_driver .....	305
acpi_bus_unregister_driver .....	306
acpi_bus_driver_init.....	307
2.5. Device drivers PnP support.....	308
pnp_register_protocol .....	308
pnp_unregister_protocol .....	309
pnp_request_card_device.....	309
pnp_release_card_device .....	310
pnp_register_card_driver .....	311
pnp_unregister_card_driver .....	311

pnp_add_id.....	312
pnp_start_dev .....	313
pnp_stop_dev .....	314
pnp_activate_dev.....	314
pnp_disable_dev .....	315
pnp_is_active .....	316
2.6. Userspace IO devices .....	317
uio_event_notify .....	317
__uio_register_device .....	317
uio_unregister_device .....	318
struct uio_mem.....	319
struct uio_port .....	320
struct uio_info .....	321
<b>3. Parallel Port Devices .....</b>	<b>325</b>
parport_yield.....	325
parport_yield_blocking.....	326
parport_wait_event.....	326
parport_wait_peripheral.....	327
parport_negotiate .....	329
parport_write.....	330
parport_read .....	331
parport_set_timeout .....	332
parport_register_driver.....	333
parport_unregister_driver.....	334
parport_get_port.....	335
parport_put_port .....	336
parport_register_port.....	337
parport_announce_port .....	338
parport_remove_port.....	339
parport_register_device.....	340
parport_unregister_device.....	342
parport_find_number.....	343
parport_find_base.....	344
parport_claim .....	344
parport_claim_or_block.....	345
parport_release .....	346
parport_open .....	347
parport_close.....	348
<b>4. Message-based devices .....</b>	<b>351</b>
4.1. Fusion message devices .....	351
mpt_register .....	351
mpt_deregister.....	352

mpt_event_register .....	353
mpt_event_deregister .....	354
mpt_reset_register .....	354
mpt_reset_deregister .....	355
mpt_device_driver_register .....	356
mpt_device_driver_deregister .....	357
mpt_get_msg_frame .....	358
mpt_put_msg_frame .....	359
mpt_put_msg_frame_hi_pri .....	360
mpt_free_msg_frame .....	361
mpt_send_handshake_request .....	362
mpt_verify_adapter .....	363
mpt_attach .....	364
mpt_detach .....	365
mpt_suspend .....	366
mpt_resume .....	366
mpt_GetLocState .....	367
mpt_alloc_fw_memory .....	368
mpt_free_fw_memory .....	369
mptbase_sas_persist_operation .....	370
mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg0 .....	371
mpt_raid_phys_disk_get_num_paths .....	372
mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg1 .....	373
mpt_findImVolumes .....	373
mpt_config .....	374
mpt_print_ioc_summary .....	375
mpt_set_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag .....	376
mpt_clear_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag .....	377
mpt_halt_firmware .....	378
mpt_Soft_Hard_ResetHandler .....	379
mpt_HardResetHandler .....	380
mpt_set_debug_level .....	381
mpt_get_cb_idx .....	382
mpt_is_discovery_complete .....	382
mpt_remove_dead_ioc_func .....	383
mpt_fault_reset_work .....	384
mpt_interrupt .....	385
mptbase_reply .....	386
mpt_add_sge .....	387
mpt_add_sge_64bit .....	388
mpt_add_sge_64bit_1078 .....	389
mpt_add_chain .....	389
mpt_add_chain_64bit .....	390

mpt_host_page_access_control.....	391
mpt_host_page_alloc .....	392
mpt_get_product_name.....	393
convert_to_kb.....	394
mpt_do_ioc_recovery.....	395
mpt_detect_bound_ports.....	396
mpt_adapter_disable .....	397
mpt_adapter_dispose.....	398
MptDisplayIocCapabilities .....	399
MakeIocReady .....	399
GetIocFacts .....	400
GetPortFacts.....	401
SendIocInit.....	402
SendPortEnable.....	403
mpt_do_upload .....	404
mpt_downloadboot .....	405
KickStart .....	406
mpt_diag_reset.....	407
SendIocReset.....	409
initChainBuffers.....	410
PrimeIocFifos.....	410
mpt_handshake_req_reply_wait .....	411
WaitForDoorbellAck.....	413
WaitForDoorbellInt.....	414
WaitForDoorbellReply .....	415
GetLanConfigPages .....	416
GetIoUnitPage2.....	416
mpt_GetScsiPortSettings .....	417
mpt_readScsiDevicePageHeaders.....	418
mpt_inactive_raid_list_free .....	419
mpt_inactive_raid_volumes .....	420
mpt_sort_ioc_pg2 .....	421
SendEventNotification .....	422
SendEventAck.....	423
mpt_ioc_reset.....	423
procmpt_create.....	424
procmpt_destroy .....	425
procmpt_summary_read .....	426
procmpt_version_read.....	427
procmpt_iocinfo_read.....	428
mpt_SoftResetHandler .....	429
ProcessEventNotification .....	430
mpt_fc_log_info.....	431

mpt_spi_log_info .....	432
mpt_sas_log_info .....	433
mpt_iocstatus_info_config .....	434
mpt_iocstatus_info .....	435
fusion_init .....	436
fusion_exit .....	437
mptscsih_info .....	438
mptscsih_proc_info .....	438
mptscsih_qcmd .....	440
mptscsih_IssueTaskMgmt .....	440
mptscsih_abort .....	442
mptscsih_dev_reset .....	443
mptscsih_bus_reset .....	443
mptscsih_host_reset .....	444
mptscsih_taskmgmt_complete .....	445
mptscsih_is_phys_disk .....	446
mptscsih_get_scsi_lookup .....	447
mptscsih_do_cmd .....	448
mptscsih_info_scsiio .....	449
_scsih_setup_eedp .....	450
_scsih_read_capacity_16 .....	451
mptscsih_getclear_scsi_lookup .....	452
mptscsih_set_scsi_lookup .....	453
SCPNT_TO_LOOKUP_IDX .....	454
mptscsih_get_completion_code .....	455
mptscsih_synchronize_cache .....	456
mptscsih_device_sas_address_show .....	457
mptscsih_device_handle_show .....	458
mptscsih_device_fw_id_show .....	459
mptctl_syscall_down .....	460
mptspi_setTargetNegoParms .....	461
mptspi_writeIOPage4 .....	462
mptspi_initTarget .....	463
mptspi_is_raid .....	464
mptspi_print_write_nego .....	465
mptspi_print_read_nego .....	466
mptspi_dv_renegotiate_work .....	467
mptspi_ioc_reset .....	467
mptspi_resume .....	468
mptspi_probe .....	469
mptspi_init .....	470
mptspi_exit .....	470
mptfc_set_sdev_queue_depth .....	471

mptfc_init.....	472
mptfc_remove .....	473
mptfc_exit .....	473
lan_reply .....	474
4.2. I2O message devices .....	475
i2o_driver_notify_controller_add .....	475
i2o_driver_notify_controller_remove .....	476
i2o_driver_notify_device_add .....	477
i2o_driver_notify_device_remove .....	478
i2o_msg_out_to_virt.....	479
i2o_msg_in_to_virt.....	480
i2o_msg_get.....	481
i2o_msg_post .....	482
i2o_msg_post_wait .....	483
i2o_msg_nop_mfa.....	484
i2o_msg_nop.....	485
i2o_flush_reply .....	486
i2o_iop_free .....	487
i2o_msg_get_wait.....	487
i2o_cntxt_list_add.....	488
i2o_cntxt_list_remove.....	489
i2o_cntxt_list_get.....	490
i2o_cntxt_list_get_ptr .....	491
i2o_find_iop .....	492
i2o_iop_find_device.....	493
i2o_status_get .....	494
i2o_event_register.....	495
i2o_iop_quiesce .....	496
i2o_iop_enable.....	497
i2o_iop_quiesce_all .....	497
i2o_iop_enable_all.....	498
i2o_iop_clear.....	499
i2o_iop_init_outbound_queue .....	500
i2o_iop_reset.....	501
i2o_iop_activate .....	502
i2o_iop_systab_set.....	502
i2o_iop_online .....	503
i2o_iop_remove .....	504
i2o_systab_build .....	505
i2o_parse_hrt.....	506
i2o_iop_release .....	507
i2o_iop_alloc.....	507
i2o_iop_add.....	508

i2o_iop_init.....	509
i2o_iop_exit .....	510
i2o_config_init .....	511
i2o_config_exit .....	511
i2o_msg_post_wait_mem .....	512
i2o_exec_lct_get .....	514
i2o_exec_wait_alloc.....	514
i2o_exec_wait_free .....	515
i2o_msg_post_wait_complete.....	516
i2o_exec_show_vendor_id.....	517
i2o_exec_show_product_id.....	518
i2o_exec_probe .....	519
i2o_exec_remove .....	520
i2o_exec_lct_notify.....	521
i2o_exec_lct_modified .....	522
i2o_exec_reply .....	523
i2o_exec_event.....	524
i2o_exec_init.....	525
i2o_exec_exit .....	525
i2o_bus_scan.....	526
i2o_bus_store_scan .....	527
i2o_bus_probe.....	528
i2o_bus_remove .....	529
i2o_bus_init.....	530
i2o_bus_exit .....	530
i2o_device_claim .....	531
i2o_device_claim_release .....	532
i2o_device_issue_claim .....	533
i2o_device_release .....	534
i2o_device_show_class_id.....	535
i2o_device_show_tid .....	536
i2o_device_alloc .....	537
i2o_device_add .....	537
i2o_device_remove .....	538
i2o_device_parse_lct.....	539
i2o_bus_match .....	540
i2o_driver_dispatch.....	541
i2o_driver_init.....	542
i2o_driver_exit .....	543
i2o_pci_free .....	544
i2o_pci_alloc.....	544
i2o_pci_interrupt.....	545
i2o_pci_irq_enable.....	546



i2o_pci_irq_disable.....	547
i2o_pci_probe .....	548
i2o_pci_remove.....	549
i2o_pci_init .....	549
i2o_pci_exit.....	550
i2o_block_device_free .....	551
i2o_block_remove.....	552
i2o_block_device_flush .....	552
i2o_block_device_mount .....	553
i2o_block_device_lock .....	554
i2o_block_device_unlock .....	555
i2o_block_device_power .....	556
i2o_block_request_alloc .....	557
i2o_block_request_free.....	558
i2o_block_sglist_alloc .....	559
i2o_block_sglist_free.....	560
i2o_block_prep_req_fn.....	561
i2o_block_delayed_request_fn .....	562
i2o_block_end_request .....	562
i2o_block_reply .....	563
i2o_block_open.....	564
i2o_block_release .....	565
i2o_block_ioctl .....	566
i2o_block_check_events .....	567
i2o_block_transfer .....	568
i2o_block_request_fn.....	569
i2o_block_device_alloc .....	570
i2o_block_probe .....	571
i2o_block_init .....	572
i2o_block_exit.....	573
i2o_scsi_get_host.....	573
i2o_scsi_remove.....	574
i2o_scsi_probe .....	575
i2o_scsi_reply .....	576
i2o_scsi_notify_device_add.....	577
i2o_scsi_notify_device_remove.....	578
i2o_scsi_notify_controller_add.....	579
i2o_scsi_notify_controller_remove .....	579
i2o_scsi_queuecommand_lck .....	580
i2o_scsi_abort .....	581
i2o_scsi_bios_param.....	582
i2o_scsi_init .....	583
i2o_scsi_exit .....	584

i2o_get_class_name .....	585
i2o_proc_create_entries .....	586
i2o_proc_subdir_remove .....	587
i2o_proc_device_add .....	588
i2o_proc_iop_add .....	589
i2o_proc_iop_remove .....	590
i2o_proc_fs_create .....	590
i2o_proc_fs_destroy .....	591
i2o_proc_init .....	592
i2o_proc_exit .....	593
<b>5. Sound Devices .....</b>	<b>595</b>
snd_register_device .....	595
snd_printk .....	596
snd_printd .....	597
snd_BUG .....	598
snd_BUG_ON .....	598
snd_printdd .....	599
register_sound_special_device .....	600
register_sound_mixer .....	601
register_sound_midi .....	602
register_sound_dsp .....	603
unregister_sound_special .....	604
unregister_sound_mixer .....	605
unregister_sound_midi .....	606
unregister_sound_dsp .....	606
snd_pcm_playback_ready .....	607
snd_pcm_capture_ready .....	608
snd_pcm_playback_data .....	609
snd_pcm_playback_empty .....	610
snd_pcm_capture_empty .....	611
snd_pcm_format_cpu_endian .....	611
snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer .....	612
snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_32_buffer .....	613
snd_pcm_new_stream .....	614
snd_pcm_new .....	615
snd_device_new .....	617
snd_device_free .....	618
snd_device_register .....	619
snd_iprintf .....	620
snd_info_get_line .....	621
snd_info_get_str .....	622
snd_info_create_module_entry .....	623
snd_info_create_card_entry .....	624

snd_card_proc_new .....	625
snd_info_free_entry .....	626
snd_info_register.....	627
snd_rawmidi_receive .....	627
snd_rawmidi_transmit_empty.....	628
__snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek.....	629
snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek.....	630
__snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack.....	631
snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack.....	632
snd_rawmidi_transmit.....	633
snd_rawmidi_new .....	634
snd_rawmidi_set_ops.....	636
snd_request_card.....	637
snd_lookup_minor_data.....	637
snd_register_device_for_dev .....	638
snd_unregister_device.....	640
copy_to_user_fromio .....	641
copy_from_user_toio .....	642
snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_free_for_all .....	643
snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages .....	644
snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages_for_all.....	645
snd_pcm_sgbuf_ops_page .....	646
snd_pcm_lib_malloc_pages.....	647
snd_pcm_lib_free_pages.....	648
snd_pcm_lib_free_vmalloc_buffer .....	649
snd_pcm_lib_get_vmalloc_page.....	649
snd_card_create.....	650
snd_card_disconnect.....	652
snd_card_unref.....	652
snd_card_set_id.....	653
snd_card_register .....	654
snd_component_add .....	655
snd_card_file_add .....	656
snd_card_file_remove .....	657
snd_power_wait .....	658
snd_dma_program.....	659
snd_dma_disable.....	660
snd_dma_pointer.....	661
snd_ctl_new1 .....	662
snd_ctl_free_one.....	663
snd_ctl_add .....	663
snd_ctl_replace .....	664
snd_ctl_remove .....	665

snd_ctl_remove_id .....	666
snd_ctl_activate_id .....	667
snd_ctl_rename_id .....	668
snd_ctl_find_numid .....	669
snd_ctl_find_id .....	670
snd_ctl_enum_info .....	671
snd_pcm_set_ops .....	673
snd_pcm_set_sync .....	673
snd_interval_refine .....	674
snd_interval_ratnum .....	675
snd_interval_list .....	676
snd_pcm_hw_rule_add .....	677
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_integer .....	679
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_minmax .....	680
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_list .....	681
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratnums .....	682
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratdens .....	683
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_msbits .....	683
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_step .....	684
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_pow2 .....	685
snd_pcm_hw_param_value .....	686
snd_pcm_hw_param_first .....	687
snd_pcm_hw_param_last .....	688
snd_pcm_lib_ioctl .....	690
snd_pcm_period_elapsed .....	690
snd_hwdep_new .....	691
snd_pcm_stop .....	692
snd_pcm_suspend .....	693
snd_pcm_suspend_all .....	694
snd_malloc_pages .....	695
snd_free_pages .....	696
snd_dma_alloc_pages .....	697
snd_dma_alloc_pages_fallback .....	698
snd_dma_free_pages .....	699
snd_dma_get_reserved_buf .....	700
snd_dma_reserve_buf .....	701
<b>6. 16x50 UART Driver .....</b>	<b>703</b>
/usr/src/linux-3.0.101-1.g7186a39//include/linux/serial_core.h .....	703
uart_update_timeout .....	703
uart_get_baud_rate .....	704
uart_get_divisor .....	705
uart_parse_options .....	706
uart_set_options .....	708

uart_register_driver .....	709
uart_unregister_driver .....	710
uart_add_one_port .....	710
uart_remove_one_port .....	711
uart_handle_dcd_change.....	712
uart_handle_cts_change.....	713
serial8250_suspend_port.....	714
serial8250_resume_port.....	715
serial8250_register_port .....	716
serial8250_unregister_port .....	716
<b>7. Frame Buffer Library.....</b>	<b>719</b>
7.1. Frame Buffer Memory .....	719
register_framebuffer.....	719
unregister_framebuffer.....	720
fb_set_suspend.....	721
fb_get_options.....	722
7.2. Frame Buffer Colormap .....	723
fb_dealloc_cmap.....	723
fb_copy_cmap.....	724
fb_set_cmap .....	724
fb_default_cmap .....	725
fb_invert_cmaps.....	726
7.3. Frame Buffer Video Mode Database .....	727
fb_try_mode.....	727
fb_delete_videomode.....	728
fb_find_mode .....	729
fb_var_to_videomode .....	731
fb_videomode_to_var .....	732
fb_mode_is_equal.....	732
fb_find_best_mode.....	733
fb_find_nearest_mode.....	734
fb_match_mode.....	735
fb_add_videomode.....	736
fb_destroy_modelist.....	737
fb_videomode_to_modelist.....	738
7.4. Frame Buffer Macintosh Video Mode Database.....	738
mac_vmode_to_var.....	739
mac_map_monitor_sense.....	740
mac_find_mode.....	740
7.5. Frame Buffer Fonts .....	742

<b>8. Input Subsystem.....</b>	<b>743</b>
8.1. Input core .....	743
struct input_absinfo.....	743
struct input_keymap_entry.....	744
struct ff_replay .....	745
struct ff_trigger .....	746
struct ff_envelope.....	747
struct ff_constant_effect.....	748
struct ff_ramp_effect.....	749
struct ff_condition_effect.....	750
struct ff_periodic_effect.....	751
struct ff_rumble_effect.....	752
struct ff_effect .....	753
struct input_dev.....	755
struct input_handler .....	760
struct input_handle.....	763
input_set_events_per_packet .....	764
struct ff_device.....	765
input_event.....	767
input_inject_event.....	768
input_alloc_absinfo.....	769
input_grab_device.....	770
input_release_device.....	771
input_open_device .....	772
input_close_device.....	772
input_scancode_to_scalar .....	773
input_get_keycode .....	774
input_set_keycode.....	775
input_reset_device .....	776
input_allocate_device .....	777
input_free_device.....	778
input_set_capability .....	779
input_register_device .....	780
input_unregister_device .....	781
input_register_handler .....	782
input_unregister_handler .....	782
input_handler_for_each_handle.....	783
input_register_handle.....	784
input_unregister_handle.....	785
input_ff_upload.....	786
input_ff_erase .....	787
input_ff_event .....	788
input_ff_create .....	789

input_ff_destroy .....	789
input_ff_create_memless .....	790
8.2. Multitouch Library .....	791
struct input_mt_slot .....	791
input_mt_init_slots .....	792
input_mt_destroy_slots .....	793
input_mt_report_slot_state .....	794
input_mt_report_finger_count .....	795
input_mt_report_pointer_emulation .....	796
8.3. Polled input devices .....	797
struct input_polled_dev .....	797
input_allocate_polled_device .....	798
input_free_polled_device .....	799
input_register_polled_device .....	800
input_unregister_polled_device .....	801
8.4. Matrix keyboards/keypads .....	802
struct matrix_keymap_data .....	802
struct matrix_keypad_platform_data .....	803
matrix_keypad_build_keymap .....	805
8.5. Sparse keymap support .....	806
struct key_entry .....	806
sparse_keymap_entry_from_scancode .....	807
sparse_keymap_entry_from_keycode .....	808
sparse_keymap_setup .....	809
sparse_keymap_free .....	810
sparse_keymap_report_entry .....	811
sparse_keymap_report_event .....	812
<b>9. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI) .....</b>	<b>815</b>
struct spi_device .....	815
struct spi_driver .....	818
spi_unregister_driver .....	819
struct spi_master .....	820
struct spi_transfer .....	822
struct spi_message .....	825
spi_write .....	827
spi_read .....	828
spi_w8r8 .....	829
spi_w8r16 .....	830
struct spi_board_info .....	831
spi_register_board_info .....	833
spi_register_driver .....	834
spi_alloc_device .....	835
spi_add_device .....	836

spi_new_device .....	837
spi_alloc_master .....	838
spi_register_master .....	839
spi_unregister_master .....	840
spi_busnum_to_master .....	841
spi_setup .....	842
spi_async .....	843
spi_async_locked .....	845
spi_sync .....	846
spi_sync_locked .....	847
spi_bus_lock .....	849
spi_bus_unlock .....	850
spi_write_then_read .....	851
<b>10. I<sup>2</sup>C and SMBus Subsystem.....</b>	<b>853</b>
struct i2c_driver .....	853
struct i2c_client .....	856
struct i2c_board_info .....	857
I2C_BOARD_INFO .....	859
struct i2c_msg .....	860
i2c_register_board_info .....	861
i2c_verify_client .....	863
i2c_lock_adapter .....	864
i2c_unlock_adapter .....	864
i2c_new_device .....	865
i2c_unregister_device .....	866
i2c_new_dummy .....	867
i2c_add_adapter .....	868
i2c_add_numbered_adapter .....	869
i2c_del_adapter .....	870
i2c_del_driver .....	871
i2c_use_client .....	872
i2c_release_client .....	873
i2c_transfer .....	874
i2c_master_send .....	875
i2c_master_recv .....	875
i2c_smbus_read_byte .....	876
i2c_smbus_write_byte .....	877
i2c_smbus_read_byte_data .....	878
i2c_smbus_write_byte_data .....	879
i2c_smbus_read_word_data .....	880
i2c_smbus_write_word_data .....	881
i2c_smbus_process_call .....	882
i2c_smbus_read_block_data .....	883



i2c_smbus_write_block_data.....	884
i2c_smbus_xfer .....	885



# Chapter 1. Driver Basics

## 1.1. Driver Entry and Exit points

### module\_init

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`module_init` — driver initialization entry point

#### Synopsis

```
module_init ( x );
```

#### Arguments

`x`

function to be run at kernel boot time or module insertion

#### Description

`module_init` will either be called during `do_initcalls` (if builtin) or at module insertion time (if a module). There can only be one per module.

# module\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`module_exit` — driver exit entry point

### Synopsis

```
module_exit ( x );
```

### Arguments

`x`

function to be run when driver is removed

### Description

`module_exit` will wrap the driver clean-up code with `cleanup_module` when used with `rmmod` when the driver is a module. If the driver is statically compiled into the kernel, `module_exit` has no effect. There can only be one per module.

## 1.2. Atomic and pointer manipulation

# atomic\_read

## LINUX

## Name

`atomic_read` — read atomic variable

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_read (const atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

`v`

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically reads the value of `v`.

# atomic\_set

## LINUX

## Name

`atomic_set` — set atomic variable

## Synopsis

```
void atomic_set (atomic_t * v, int i);
```

## Arguments

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

*i*

required value

## Description

Atomically sets the value of *v* to *i*.

## `atomic_add`

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_add` — add integer to atomic variable

## Synopsis

```
void atomic_add (int i, atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*i*

integer value to add

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically adds *i* to *v*.

# atomic\_sub

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_sub` — subtract integer from atomic variable

## Synopsis

```
void atomic_sub (int i, atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*i*

integer value to subtract

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically subtracts *i* from *v*.

# atomic\_sub\_and\_test

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_sub_and_test` — subtract value from variable and test result

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_sub_and_test (int i, atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*i*

integer value to subtract

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`



## Description

Atomically subtracts  $i$  from  $v$  and returns true if the result is zero, or false for all other cases.

# atomic\_inc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_inc` — increment atomic variable

## Synopsis

```
void atomic_inc (atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

$v$   
pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically increments  $v$  by 1.

# atomic\_dec

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`atomic_dec` — decrement atomic variable

### Synopsis

```
void atomic_dec (atomic_t * v);
```

### Arguments

`v`  
pointer of type `atomic_t`

### Description

Atomically decrements `v` by 1.

# atomic\_dec\_and\_test

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`atomic_dec_and_test` — decrement and test

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_dec_and_test (atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically decrements *v* by 1 and returns true if the result is 0, or false for all other cases.

## atomic\_inc\_and\_test

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_inc_and_test` — increment and test

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_inc_and_test (atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically increments *v* by 1 and returns true if the result is zero, or false for all other cases.

# atomic\_add\_negative

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_add_negative` — add and test if negative

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_add_negative (int i, atomic_t * v);
```

## Arguments

*i*

integer value to add

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically adds  $i$  to  $v$  and returns true if the result is negative, or false when result is greater than or equal to zero.

# atomic\_add\_return

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`atomic_add_return` — add integer and return

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_add_return (int  $i$ , atomic_t *  $v$ );
```

## Arguments

$i$

integer value to add

$v$

pointer of type `atomic_t`

## Description

Atomically adds  $i$  to  $v$  and returns  $i + v$

# atomic\_sub\_return

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`atomic_sub_return` — subtract integer and return

### Synopsis

```
int atomic_sub_return (int i, atomic_t * v);
```

### Arguments

*i*  
integer value to subtract

*v*  
pointer of type `atomic_t`

### Description

Atomically subtracts *i* from *v* and returns  $v - i$

# atomic\_add\_unless

## LINUX

## Name

`atomic_add_unless` — add unless the number is already a given value

## Synopsis

```
int atomic_add_unless (atomic_t * v, int a, int u);
```

## Arguments

*v*

pointer of type `atomic_t`

*a*

the amount to add to *v*...

*u*

...unless *v* is equal to *u*.

## Description

Atomically adds *a* to *v*, so long as *v* was not already *u*. Returns non-zero if *v* was not *u*, and zero otherwise.

## `atomic_inc_short`

**LINUX**

## Name

`atomic_inc_short` — increment of a short integer

## Synopsis

```
short int atomic_inc_short (short int * v);
```

## Arguments

`v`

pointer to type `int`

## Description

Atomically adds 1 to `v`. Returns the new value of `u`.

# atomic\_or\_long

## LINUX

## Name

`atomic_or_long` — OR of two long integers



## Synopsis

```
void atomic_or_long (unsigned long * v1, unsigned long v2);
```

## Arguments

*v1*

pointer to type unsigned long

*v2*

pointer to type unsigned long

## Description

Atomically ORs *v1* and *v2* Returns the result of the OR

## 1.3. Delaying, scheduling, and timer routines

### struct task\_cputime

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

struct task\_cputime — collected CPU time counts

#### Synopsis

```
struct task_cputime {
```

```
    cputime_t utime;  
    cputime_t stime;  
    unsigned long long sum_exec_runtime;  
};
```

## Members

utime

time spent in user mode, in cputime\_t units

stime

time spent in kernel mode, in cputime\_t units

sum\_exec\_runtime

total time spent on the CPU, in nanoseconds

## Description

This structure groups together three kinds of CPU time that are tracked for threads and thread groups. Most things considering CPU time want to group these counts together and treat all three of them in parallel.

# struct thread\_group\_cputimer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct thread\_group\_cputimer — thread group interval timer counts

## Synopsis

```
struct thread_group_cputimer {
```

```

struct task_cputime cputime;
int running;
spinlock_t lock;
};

```

## Members

`cputime`

thread group interval timers.

`running`

non-zero when there are timers running and *cputime* receives updates.

`lock`

lock for fields in this struct.

## Description

This structure contains the version of `task_cputime`, above, that is used for thread group CPU timer calculations.

# pid\_alive

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pid_alive` — check that a task structure is not stale

## Synopsis

```
int pid_alive (struct task_struct * p);
```

## Arguments

*p*

Task structure to be checked.

## Description

Test if a process is not yet dead (at most zombie state) If `pid_alive` fails, then pointers within the task structure can be stale and must not be dereferenced.

# is\_global\_init

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`is_global_init` — check if a task structure is init

## Synopsis

```
int is_global_init (struct task_struct * tsk);
```

## Arguments

*tsk*

Task structure to be checked.

## Description

Check if a task structure is the first user space task the kernel created.

# wake\_up\_process

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wake_up_process` — Wake up a specific process

## Synopsis

```
int wake_up_process (struct task_struct * p);
```

## Arguments

*p*

The process to be woken up.

## Description

Attempt to wake up the nominated process and move it to the set of runnable processes. Returns 1 if the process was woken up, 0 if it was already running.

It may be assumed that this function implies a write memory barrier before changing the task state if and only if any tasks are woken up.

# preempt\_notifier\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`preempt_notifier_register` — tell me when current is being preempted & rescheduled

### Synopsis

```
void preempt_notifier_register (struct preempt_notifier *  
notifier);
```

### Arguments

*notifier*

notifier struct to register

# preempt\_notifier\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`preempt_notifier_unregister` — no longer interested in preemption notifications

## Synopsis

```
void preempt_notifier_unregister (struct preempt_notifier *
notifier);
```

## Arguments

*notifier*

notifier struct to unregister

## Description

This is safe to call from within a preemption notifier.

## \_\_wake\_up

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

\_\_wake\_up — wake up threads blocked on a waitqueue.

## Synopsis

```
void __wake_up (wait_queue_head_t * q, unsigned int mode, int
nr_exclusive, void * key);
```

## Arguments

<i>q</i>	the waitqueue
<i>mode</i>	which threads
<i>nr_exclusive</i>	how many wake-one or wake-many threads to wake up
<i>key</i>	is directly passed to the wakeup function

## Description

It may be assumed that this function implies a write memory barrier before changing the task state if and only if any tasks are woken up.

# \_\_wake\_up\_sync\_key

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

## Name

`__wake_up_sync_key` — wake up threads blocked on a waitqueue.

## Synopsis

```
void __wake_up_sync_key (wait_queue_head_t * q, unsigned int  
mode, int nr_exclusive, void * key);
```



## Arguments

*q*

the waitqueue

*mode*

which threads

*nr\_exclusive*

how many wake-one or wake-many threads to wake up

*key*

opaque value to be passed to wakeup targets

## Description

The sync wakeup differs that the waker knows that it will schedule away soon, so while the target thread will be woken up, it will not be migrated to another CPU - ie. the two threads are 'synchronized' with each other. This can prevent needless bouncing between CPUs.

On UP it can prevent extra preemption.

It may be assumed that this function implies a write memory barrier before changing the task state if and only if any tasks are woken up.

## complete

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`complete` — signals a single thread waiting on this completion

## Synopsis

```
void complete (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

*x*

holds the state of this particular completion

## Description

This will wake up a single thread waiting on this completion. Threads will be awakened in the same order in which they were queued.

See also `complete_all`, `wait_for_completion` and related routines.

It may be assumed that this function implies a write memory barrier before changing the task state if and only if any tasks are woken up.

## complete\_all

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`complete_all` — signals all threads waiting on this completion

## Synopsis

```
void complete_all (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

`x`

holds the state of this particular completion

## Description

This will wake up all threads waiting on this particular completion event.

It may be assumed that this function implies a write memory barrier before changing the task state if and only if any tasks are woken up.

# wait\_for\_completion

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_for_completion` — waits for completion of a task

## Synopsis

```
void __sched wait_for_completion (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

`x`

holds the state of this particular completion

## Description

This waits to be signaled for completion of a specific task. It is NOT interruptible and there is no timeout.

See also similar routines (i.e. `wait_for_completion_timeout`) with timeout and interrupt capability. Also see `complete`.

# wait\_for\_completion\_timeout

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_for_completion_timeout` — waits for completion of a task (w/timeout)

## Synopsis

```
unsigned long __sched wait_for_completion_timeout (struct  
completion * x, unsigned long timeout);
```

## Arguments

*x*

holds the state of this particular completion

*timeout*

timeout value in jiffies

## Description

This waits for either a completion of a specific task to be signaled or for a specified timeout to expire. The timeout is in jiffies. It is not interruptible.

# wait\_for\_completion\_interruptible

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_for_completion_interruptible` — waits for completion of a task (w/intr)

## Synopsis

```
int __sched wait_for_completion_interruptible (struct
completion * x);
```

## Arguments

`x`

holds the state of this particular completion

## Description

This waits for completion of a specific task to be signaled. It is interruptible.

# wait\_for\_completion\_interruptible\_timeout

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_for_completion_interruptible_timeout` — waits for completion (w/(to,intr))

### Synopsis

```
long __sched wait_for_completion_interruptible_timeout (struct  
completion * x, unsigned long timeout);
```

### Arguments

*x*

holds the state of this particular completion

*timeout*

timeout value in jiffies

### Description

This waits for either a completion of a specific task to be signaled or for a specified timeout to expire. It is interruptible. The timeout is in jiffies.

# wait\_for\_completion\_killable

## LINUX

## Name

`wait_for_completion_killable` — waits for completion of a task (killable)

## Synopsis

```
int __sched wait_for_completion_killable (struct completion *
x);
```

## Arguments

`x`  
holds the state of this particular completion

## Description

This waits to be signaled for completion of a specific task. It can be interrupted by a kill signal.

# `wait_for_completion_killable_timeout`

## LINUX

## Name

`wait_for_completion_killable_timeout` — waits for completion of a task (w/(to,killable))

## Synopsis

```
long __sched wait_for_completion_killable_timeout (struct
completion * x, unsigned long timeout);
```

## Arguments

*x*

holds the state of this particular completion

*timeout*

timeout value in jiffies

## Description

This waits for either a completion of a specific task to be signaled or for a specified timeout to expire. It can be interrupted by a kill signal. The timeout is in jiffies.

# try\_wait\_for\_completion

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`try_wait_for_completion` — try to decrement a completion without blocking

## Synopsis

```
bool try_wait_for_completion (struct completion * x);
```



## Arguments

`x`

completion structure

## Returns

0 if a decrement cannot be done without blocking 1 if a decrement succeeded.

If a completion is being used as a counting completion, attempt to decrement the counter without blocking. This enables us to avoid waiting if the resource the completion is protecting is not available.

# completion\_done

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`completion_done` — Test to see if a completion has any waiters

## Synopsis

```
bool completion_done (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

*x*

completion structure

## Returns

0 if there are waiters (`wait_for_completion` in progress) 1 if there are no waiters.

# task\_nice

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`task_nice` — return the nice value of a given task.

## Synopsis

```
int task_nice (const struct task_struct * p);
```

## Arguments

*p*

the task in question.

# sched\_setscheduler

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`sched_setscheduler` — change the scheduling policy and/or RT priority of a thread.

### Synopsis

```
int sched_setscheduler (struct task_struct * p, int policy,  
const struct sched_param * param);
```

### Arguments

*p*

the task in question.

*policy*

new policy.

*param*

structure containing the new RT priority.

### Description

NOTE that the task may be already dead.

# yield

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`yield` — yield the current processor to other threads.

### Synopsis

```
void __sched yield ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

This is a shortcut for kernel-space yielding - it marks the thread runnable and calls `sys_sched_yield`.

# yield\_to

## LINUX

## Name

`yield_to` — yield the current processor to another thread in your thread group, or accelerate that thread toward the processor it's on.

## Synopsis

```
bool __sched yield_to (struct task_struct * p, bool preempt);
```

## Arguments

*p*

target task

*preempt*

whether task preemption is allowed or not

## Description

It's the caller's job to ensure that the target task struct can't go away on us before we can do any checks.

Returns true if we indeed boosted the target task.

# DECLARE\_COMPLETION

**LINUX**

## Name

`DECLARE_COMPLETION` — declare and initialize a completion structure

## Synopsis

```
DECLARE_COMPLETION ( work );
```

## Arguments

*work*

identifier for the completion structure

## Description

This macro declares and initializes a completion structure. Generally used for static declarations. You should use the `_ONSTACK` variant for automatic variables.

# DECLARE\_COMPLETION\_ONSTACK

## LINUX

## Name

`DECLARE_COMPLETION_ONSTACK` — declare and initialize a completion structure

## Synopsis

```
DECLARE_COMPLETION_ONSTACK ( work );
```

## Arguments

*work*

identifier for the completion structure

## Description

This macro declares and initializes a completion structure on the kernel stack.

## init\_completion

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`init_completion` — Initialize a dynamically allocated completion

## Synopsis

```
void init_completion (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

`x`

pointer to completion structure that is to be initialized

## Description

This inline function will initialize a dynamically created completion structure.

# reinit\_completion

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`reinit_completion` — reinitialize a completion structure

## Synopsis

```
void reinit_completion (struct completion * x);
```

## Arguments

`x`

pointer to completion structure that is to be reinitialized



## Description

This inline function should be used to reinitialize a completion structure so it can be reused. This is especially important after `complete_all` is used.

# INIT\_COMPLETION

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`INIT_COMPLETION` — reinitialize a completion structure

## Synopsis

```
INIT_COMPLETION ( x );
```

## Arguments

`x`  
completion structure to be reinitialized

## Description

This macro should be used to reinitialize a completion structure so it can be reused. This is especially important after `complete_all` is used.

# \_\_round\_jiffies

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__round_jiffies` — function to round jiffies to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long __round_jiffies (unsigned long j, int cpu);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (absolute) jiffies that should be rounded

*cpu*

the processor number on which the timeout will happen

### Description

`__round_jiffies` rounds an absolute time in the future (in jiffies) up or down to (approximately) full seconds. This is useful for timers for which the exact time they fire does not matter too much, as long as they fire approximately every X seconds.

By rounding these timers to whole seconds, all such timers will fire at the same time, rather than at various times spread out. The goal of this is to have the CPU wake up less, which saves power.

The exact rounding is skewed for each processor to avoid all processors firing at the exact same time, which could lead to lock contention or spurious cache line bouncing.

The return value is the rounded version of the *j* parameter.

# **\_\_round\_jiffies\_relative**

## **LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### **Name**

`__round_jiffies_relative` — function to round jiffies to a full second

### **Synopsis**

```
unsigned long __round_jiffies_relative (unsigned long j, int  
cpu);
```

### **Arguments**

*j*

the time in (relative) jiffies that should be rounded

*cpu*

the processor number on which the timeout will happen

### **Description**

`__round_jiffies_relative` rounds a time delta in the future (in jiffies) up or down to (approximately) full seconds. This is useful for timers for which the exact time they fire does not matter too much, as long as they fire approximately every X seconds.

By rounding these timers to whole seconds, all such timers will fire at the same time, rather than at various times spread out. The goal of this is to have the CPU wake up less, which saves power.

The exact rounding is skewed for each processor to avoid all processors firing at the exact same time, which could lead to lock contention or spurious cache line bouncing.

The return value is the rounded version of the *j* parameter.

## round\_jiffies

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`round_jiffies` — function to round jiffies to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long round_jiffies (unsigned long j);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (absolute) jiffies that should be rounded

### Description

`round_jiffies` rounds an absolute time in the future (in jiffies) up or down to (approximately) full seconds. This is useful for timers for which the exact time they fire does not matter too much, as long as they fire approximately every X seconds.

By rounding these timers to whole seconds, all such timers will fire at the same time, rather than at various times spread out. The goal of this is to have the CPU wake up less, which saves power.

The return value is the rounded version of the *j* parameter.

# round\_jiffies\_relative

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`round_jiffies_relative` — function to round jiffies to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long round_jiffies_relative (unsigned long j);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (relative) jiffies that should be rounded

### Description

`round_jiffies_relative` rounds a time delta in the future (in jiffies) up or down to (approximately) full seconds. This is useful for timers for which the exact time they fire does not matter too much, as long as they fire approximately every X seconds.

By rounding these timers to whole seconds, all such timers will fire at the same time, rather than at various times spread out. The goal of this is to have the CPU wake up less, which saves power.

The return value is the rounded version of the *j* parameter.

# \_\_round\_jiffies\_up

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__round_jiffies_up` — function to round jiffies up to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long __round_jiffies_up (unsigned long j, int cpu);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (absolute) jiffies that should be rounded

*cpu*

the processor number on which the timeout will happen

### Description

This is the same as `__round_jiffies` except that it will never round down. This is useful for timeouts for which the exact time of firing does not matter too much, as long as they don't fire too early.

# \_\_round\_jiffies\_up\_relative

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__round_jiffies_up_relative` — function to round jiffies up to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long __round_jiffies_up_relative (unsigned long j,  
int cpu);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (relative) jiffies that should be rounded

*cpu*

the processor number on which the timeout will happen

### Description

This is the same as `__round_jiffies_relative` except that it will never round down. This is useful for timeouts for which the exact time of firing does not matter too much, as long as they don't fire too early.

# round\_jiffies\_up

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`round_jiffies_up` — function to round jiffies up to a full second

### Synopsis

```
unsigned long round_jiffies_up (unsigned long j);
```

### Arguments

*j*

the time in (absolute) jiffies that should be rounded

### Description

This is the same as `round_jiffies` except that it will never round down. This is useful for timeouts for which the exact time of firing does not matter too much, as long as they don't fire too early.

# round\_jiffies\_up\_relative

## LINUX



## Name

`round_jiffies_up_relative` — function to round jiffies up to a full second

## Synopsis

```
unsigned long round_jiffies_up_relative (unsigned long j);
```

## Arguments

*j*

the time in (relative) jiffies that should be rounded

## Description

This is the same as `round_jiffies_relative` except that it will never round down. This is useful for timeouts for which the exact time of firing does not matter too much, as long as they don't fire too early.

# set\_timer\_slack

## LINUX

## Name

`set_timer_slack` — set the allowed slack for a timer

## Synopsis

```
void set_timer_slack (struct timer_list * timer, int  
slack_hz);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be modified

*slack\_hz*

the amount of time (in jiffies) allowed for rounding

## Description

Set the amount of time, in jiffies, that a certain timer has in terms of slack. By setting this value, the timer subsystem will schedule the actual timer somewhere between the time `mod_timer` asks for, and that time plus the slack.

By setting the slack to -1, a percentage of the delay is used instead.

## init\_timer\_key

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`init_timer_key` — initialize a timer

## Synopsis

```
void init_timer_key (struct timer_list * timer, const char *
name, struct lock_class_key * key);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be initialized

*name*

name of the timer

*key*

lockdep class key of the fake lock used for tracking timer sync lock dependencies

## Description

`init_timer_key` must be done to a timer prior calling *any* of the other timer functions.

## mod\_timer\_pending

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mod_timer_pending` — modify a pending timer's timeout

## Synopsis

```
int mod_timer_pending (struct timer_list * timer, unsigned  
long expires);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the pending timer to be modified

*expires*

new timeout in jiffies

## Description

`mod_timer_pending` is the same for pending timers as `mod_timer`, but will not re-activate and modify already deleted timers.

It is useful for unserialized use of timers.

## mod\_timer

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mod_timer` — modify a timer's timeout

## Synopsis

```
int mod_timer (struct timer_list * timer, unsigned long
expires);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be modified

*expires*

new timeout in jiffies

## Description

`mod_timer` is a more efficient way to update the expire field of an active timer (if the timer is inactive it will be activated)

`mod_timer(timer, expires)` is equivalent to:

```
del_timer(timer); timer->expires = expires; add_timer(timer);
```

Note that if there are multiple unserialized concurrent users of the same timer, then `mod_timer` is the only safe way to modify the timeout, since `add_timer` cannot modify an already running timer.

The function returns whether it has modified a pending timer or not. (ie.

`mod_timer` of an inactive timer returns 0, `mod_timer` of an active timer returns 1.)

## mod\_timer\_pinned

**LINUX**

## Name

`mod_timer_pinned` — modify a timer's timeout

## Synopsis

```
int mod_timer_pinned (struct timer_list * timer, unsigned long
expires);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be modified

*expires*

new timeout in jiffies

## Description

`mod_timer_pinned` is a way to update the expire field of an active timer (if the timer is inactive it will be activated) and not allow the timer to be migrated to a different CPU.

`mod_timer_pinned(timer, expires)` is equivalent to:

`del_timer(timer); timer->expires = expires; add_timer(timer);`

## add\_timer

**LINUX**

## Name

`add_timer` — start a timer

## Synopsis

```
void add_timer (struct timer_list * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be added

## Description

The kernel will do a `->function(->data)` callback from the timer interrupt at the `->expires` point in the future. The current time is 'jiffies'.

The timer's `->expires`, `->function` (and if the handler uses it, `->data`) fields must be set prior calling this function.

Timers with an `->expires` field in the past will be executed in the next timer tick.

## `add_timer_on`

### LINUX

## Name

`add_timer_on` — start a timer on a particular CPU

## Synopsis

```
void add_timer_on (struct timer_list * timer, int cpu);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be added

*cpu*

the CPU to start it on

## Description

This is not very scalable on SMP. Double adds are not possible.

## del\_timer

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`del_timer` — deactivate a timer.

## Synopsis

```
int del_timer (struct timer_list * timer);
```



## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be deactivated

## Description

`del_timer` deactivates a timer - this works on both active and inactive timers.

The function returns whether it has deactivated a pending timer or not. (ie.

`del_timer` of an inactive timer returns 0, `del_timer` of an active timer returns 1.)

# try\_to\_del\_timer\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`try_to_del_timer_sync` — Try to deactivate a timer

## Synopsis

```
int try_to_del_timer_sync (struct timer_list * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

timer do del

## Description

This function tries to deactivate a timer. Upon successful (`ret >= 0`) exit the timer is not queued and the handler is not running on any CPU.

# del\_timer\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`del_timer_sync` — deactivate a timer and wait for the handler to finish.

## Synopsis

```
int del_timer_sync (struct timer_list * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be deactivated

## Description

This function only differs from `del_timer` on SMP: besides deactivating the timer it also makes sure the handler has finished executing on other CPUs.

## Synchronization rules

Callers must prevent restarting of the timer, otherwise this function is meaningless. It must not be called from interrupt contexts. The caller must not hold locks which would prevent completion of the timer's handler. The timer's handler must not call `add_timer_on`. Upon exit the timer is not queued and the handler is not running on any CPU.

## Note

You must not hold locks that are held in interrupt context while calling this function. Even if the lock has nothing to do with the timer in question. Here's why:

```
CPU0 CPU1 ---- <SOFTIRQ> call_timer_fn; base->running_timer =
mytimer; spin_lock_irq(somelock); <IRQ> spin_lock(somelock);
del_timer_sync(mytimer); while (base->running_timer == mytimer);
```

Now `del_timer_sync` will never return and never release `somelock`. The interrupt on the other CPU is waiting to grab `somelock` but it has interrupted the softirq that CPU0 is waiting to finish.

The function returns whether it has deactivated a pending timer or not.

## schedule\_timeout

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`schedule_timeout` — sleep until timeout

## Synopsis

```
signed long __sched schedule_timeout (signed long timeout);
```

## Arguments

*timeout*

timeout value in jiffies

## Description

Make the current task sleep until *timeout* jiffies have elapsed. The routine will return immediately unless the current task state has been set (see `set_current_state`).

You can set the task state as follows -

`TASK_UNINTERRUPTIBLE` - at least *timeout* jiffies are guaranteed to pass before the routine returns. The routine will return 0

`TASK_INTERRUPTIBLE` - the routine may return early if a signal is delivered to the current task. In this case the remaining time in jiffies will be returned, or 0 if the timer expired in time

The current task state is guaranteed to be `TASK_RUNNING` when this routine returns.

Specifying a *timeout* value of `MAX_SCHEDULE_TIMEOUT` will schedule the CPU away without a bound on the timeout. In this case the return value will be `MAX_SCHEDULE_TIMEOUT`.

In all cases the return value is guaranteed to be non-negative.

## msleep

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`msleep` — sleep safely even with waitqueue interruptions

## Synopsis

```
void msleep (unsigned int msecs);
```

## Arguments

*msecs*

Time in milliseconds to sleep for

## msleep\_interruptible

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`msleep_interruptible` — sleep waiting for signals

## Synopsis

```
unsigned long msleep_interruptible (unsigned int msecs);
```

## Arguments

*msecs*

Time in milliseconds to sleep for

# usleep\_range

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`usleep_range` — Drop in replacement for `udelay` where wakeup is flexible

### Synopsis

```
void usleep_range (unsigned long min, unsigned long max);
```

### Arguments

*min*

Minimum time in usecs to sleep

*max*

Maximum time in usecs to sleep

## 1.4. Wait queues and Wake events

### wait\_event

## LINUX

## Name

`wait_event` — sleep until a condition gets true

## Synopsis

```
wait_event ( wq, condition );
```

## Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_UNINTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

## `wait_event_timeout`

**LINUX**

## Name

`wait_event_timeout` — sleep until a condition gets true or a timeout elapses

## Synopsis

```
wait_event_timeout ( wq, condition, timeout );
```

## Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

*timeout*

timeout, in jiffies

## Description

The process is put to sleep (`TASK_UNINTERRUPTIBLE`) until the *condition* evaluates to true. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function returns 0 if the *timeout* elapsed, or the remaining jiffies (at least 1) if the *condition* evaluated to `true` before the *timeout* elapsed.



# wait\_event\_interruptible

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_event_interruptible` — sleep until a condition gets true

### Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible ( wq, condition );
```

### Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

### Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return `-ERESTARTSYS` if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

# wait\_event\_interruptible\_timeout

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_event_interruptible_timeout` — sleep until a condition gets true or a timeout elapses

### Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_timeout ( wq, condition, timeout );
```

### Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

*timeout*

timeout, in jiffies

### Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

## Returns

0 if the *timeout* elapsed, -ERESTARTSYS if it was interrupted by a signal, or the remaining jiffies (at least 1) if the *condition* evaluated to `true` before the *timeout* elapsed.

# wait\_event\_interruptible\_locked

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_event_interruptible_locked` — sleep until a condition gets true

## Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_locked ( wq, condition );
```

## Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

It must be called with `wq.lock` being held. This spinlock is unlocked while sleeping but *condition* testing is done while lock is held and when this macro exits the lock is held.

The lock is locked/unlocked using `spin_lock/spin_unlock` functions which must match the way they are locked/unlocked outside of this macro.

`wake_up_locked` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return `-ERESTARTSYS` if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

## wait\_event\_interruptible\_locked\_irq

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_event_interruptible_locked_irq` — sleep until a condition gets true

### Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_locked_irq ( wq, condition );
```

### Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

It must be called with *wq.lock* being held. This spinlock is unlocked while sleeping but *condition* testing is done while lock is held and when this macro exits the lock is held.

The lock is locked/unlocked using *spin\_lock\_irq/spin\_unlock\_irq* functions which must match the way they are locked/unlocked outside of this macro.

*wake\_up\_locked* has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return -ERESTARTSYS if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

# wait\_event\_interruptible\_exclusive\_locked

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

*wait\_event\_interruptible\_exclusive\_locked* — sleep exclusively until a condition gets true

## Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_exclusive_locked ( wq, condition );
```

## Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

It must be called with *wq.lock* being held. This spinlock is unlocked while sleeping but *condition* testing is done while lock is held and when this macro exits the lock is held.

The lock is locked/unlocked using *spin\_lock/spin\_unlock* functions which must match the way they are locked/unlocked outside of this macro.

The process is put on the wait queue with an WQ\_FLAG\_EXCLUSIVE flag set thus when other process waits process on the list if this process is awoken further processes are not considered.

*wake\_up\_locked* has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return -ERESTARTSYS if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

# wait\_event\_interruptible\_exclusive\_locked\_irq

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

*wait\_event\_interruptible\_exclusive\_locked\_irq* — sleep until a

condition gets true

## Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_exclusive_locked_irq ( wq,  
        condition );
```

## Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

It must be called with *wq.lock* being held. This spinlock is unlocked while sleeping but *condition* testing is done while lock is held and when this macro exits the lock is held.

The lock is locked/unlocked using *spin\_lock\_irq/spin\_unlock\_irq* functions which must match the way they are locked/unlocked outside of this macro.

The process is put on the wait queue with an WQ\_FLAG\_EXCLUSIVE flag set thus when other process waits process on the list if this process is awoken further processes are not considered.

*wake\_up\_locked* has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return -ERESTARTSYS if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

# wait\_event\_interruptible\_lock\_irq\_timeout

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_event_interruptible_lock_irq_timeout` — sleep until a condition gets true or a timeout elapses. The condition is checked under the lock. This is expected to be called with the lock taken.

### Synopsis

```
wait_event_interruptible_lock_irq_timeout ( wq,  condition,  
      lock,  timeout );
```

### Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

*lock*

a locked `spinlock_t`, which will be released before `schedule` and reacquired afterwards.

*timeout*

timeout, in jiffies



## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_INTERRUPTIBLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

This is supposed to be called while holding the lock. The lock is dropped before going to sleep and is reacquired afterwards.

The function returns 0 if the *timeout* elapsed, `-ERESTARTSYS` if it was interrupted by a signal, and the remaining jiffies otherwise if the condition evaluated to true before the timeout elapsed.

## wait\_event\_killable

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`wait_event_killable` — sleep until a condition gets true

### Synopsis

```
wait_event_killable ( wq, condition );
```

### Arguments

*wq*

the waitqueue to wait on

*condition*

a C expression for the event to wait for

## Description

The process is put to sleep (TASK\_KILLABLE) until the *condition* evaluates to true or a signal is received. The *condition* is checked each time the waitqueue *wq* is woken up.

`wake_up` has to be called after changing any variable that could change the result of the wait condition.

The function will return `-ERESTARTSYS` if it was interrupted by a signal and 0 if *condition* evaluated to true.

# wait\_on\_bit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_on_bit` — wait for a bit to be cleared

## Synopsis

```
int wait_on_bit (void * word, int bit, int (*action) (void *),  
unsigned mode);
```

## Arguments

*word*

the word being waited on, a kernel virtual address

*bit*

the bit of the word being waited on

*action*

the function used to sleep, which may take special actions

*mode*

the task state to sleep in

## Description

There is a standard hashed waitqueue table for generic use. This is the part of the hashtable's accessor API that waits on a bit. For instance, if one were to have waiters on a bitflag, one would call `wait_on_bit` in threads waiting for the bit to clear. One uses `wait_on_bit` where one is waiting for the bit to clear, but has no intention of setting it.

# wait\_on\_bit\_lock

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_on_bit_lock` — wait for a bit to be cleared, when wanting to set it

## Synopsis

```
int wait_on_bit_lock (void * word, int bit, int (*action)
(void *), unsigned mode);
```

## Arguments

*word*

the word being waited on, a kernel virtual address

*bit*

the bit of the word being waited on

*action*

the function used to sleep, which may take special actions

*mode*

the task state to sleep in

## Description

There is a standard hashed waitqueue table for generic use. This is the part of the hashtable's accessor API that waits on a bit when one intends to set it, for instance, trying to lock bitflags. For instance, if one were to have waiters trying to set bitflag and waiting for it to clear before setting it, one would call `wait_on_bit` in threads waiting to be able to set the bit. One uses `wait_on_bit_lock` where one is waiting for the bit to clear with the intention of setting it, and when done, clearing it.

# wait\_on\_atomic\_t

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wait_on_atomic_t` — Wait for an `atomic_t` to become 0

## Synopsis

```
int wait_on_atomic_t (atomic_t * val, int (*action) (atomic_t
*), unsigned mode);
```

## Arguments

*val*

The atomic value being waited on, a kernel virtual address

*action*

the function used to sleep, which may take special actions

*mode*

the task state to sleep in

## Description

Wait for an `atomic_t` to become 0. We abuse the bit-wait waitqueue table for the purpose of getting a waitqueue, but we set the key to a bit number outside of the target 'word'.

## finish\_wait

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`finish_wait` — clean up after waiting in a queue

## Synopsis

```
void finish_wait (wait_queue_head_t * q, wait_queue_t * wait);
```

## Arguments

*q*

waitqueue waited on

*wait*

wait descriptor

## Description

Sets current thread back to running state and removes the wait descriptor from the given waitqueue if still queued.

# abort\_exclusive\_wait

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`abort_exclusive_wait` — abort exclusive waiting in a queue

## Synopsis

```
void abort_exclusive_wait (wait_queue_head_t * q, wait_queue_t  
* wait, unsigned int mode, void * key);
```

## Arguments

<i>q</i>	waitqueue waited on
<i>wait</i>	wait descriptor
<i>mode</i>	runstate of the waiter to be woken
<i>key</i>	key to identify a wait bit queue or <code>NULL</code>

## Description

Sets current thread back to running state and removes the wait descriptor from the given waitqueue if still queued.

Wakes up the next waiter if the caller is concurrently woken up through the queue.

This prevents waiter starvation where an exclusive waiter aborts and is woken up concurrently and no one wakes up the next waiter.

## wake\_up\_bit

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

## Name

`wake_up_bit` — wake up a waiter on a bit

## Synopsis

```
void wake_up_bit (void * word, int bit);
```

## Arguments

*word*

the word being waited on, a kernel virtual address

*bit*

the bit of the word being waited on

## Description

There is a standard hashed waitqueue table for generic use. This is the part of the hashtable's accessor API that wakes up waiters on a bit. For instance, if one were to have waiters on a bitflag, one would call `wake_up_bit` after clearing the bit.

In order for this to function properly, as it uses `waitqueue_active` internally, some kind of memory barrier must be done prior to calling this. Typically, this will be `smp_mb__after_clear_bit`, but in some cases where bitflags are manipulated non-atomically under a lock, one may need to use a less regular barrier, such as `fs/inode.c`'s `smp_mb`, because `spin_unlock` does not guarantee a memory barrier.

## wake\_up\_atomic\_t

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`wake_up_atomic_t` — Wake up a waiter on a `atomic_t`



## Synopsis

```
void wake_up_atomic_t (atomic_t * p);
```

## Arguments

*p*

-- undescribed --

## Description

Wake up anyone waiting for the atomic\_t to go to zero.

Abuse the bit-waker function and its waitqueue hash table set (the atomic\_t check is done by the waiter's wake function, not the by the waker itself).

## 1.5. High-resolution timers

### ktime\_set

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

ktime\_set — Set a ktime\_t variable from a seconds/nanoseconds value

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t ktime_set (const long secs, const unsigned long  
nsecs);
```

## Arguments

*secs*

seconds to set

*nsecs*

nanoseconds to set

## Description

Return the `ktime_t` representation of the value

# ktime\_sub

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`ktime_sub` — subtract two `ktime_t` variables

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t ktime_sub (const ktime_t lhs, const ktime_t rhs);
```

## Arguments

*lhs*

minuend

*rhs*

subtrahend

## Description

Returns the remainder of the subtraction

## ktime\_add

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

ktime\_add — add two ktime\_t variables

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t ktime_add (const ktime_t add1, const ktime_t add2);
```

## Arguments

*add1*

addend1

*add2*

*addend2*

## Description

Returns the sum of *add1* and *add2*.

# timespec\_to\_ktime

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`timespec_to_ktime` — convert a `timespec` to `ktime_t` format

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t timespec_to_ktime (const struct timespec ts);
```

## Arguments

*ts*

the `timespec` variable to convert

## Description

Returns a `ktime_t` variable with the converted `timespec` value

# timeval\_to\_ktime

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`timeval_to_ktime` — convert a `timeval` to `ktime_t` format

### Synopsis

```
ktime_t timeval_to_ktime (const struct timeval tv);
```

### Arguments

`tv`

the `timeval` variable to convert

### Description

Returns a `ktime_t` variable with the converted `timeval` value

# ktime\_to\_timespec

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`ktime_to_timespec` — convert a `ktime_t` variable to `timespec` format

## Synopsis

```
struct timespec ktime_to_timespec (const ktime_t kt);
```

## Arguments

*kt*

the ktime\_t variable to convert

## Description

Returns the timespec representation of the ktime value

# ktime\_to\_timeval

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

ktime\_to\_timeval — convert a ktime\_t variable to timeval format

## Synopsis

```
struct timeval ktime_to_timeval (const ktime_t kt);
```

## Arguments

*kt*

the `ktime_t` variable to convert

## Description

Returns the `timeval` representation of the `ktime` value

# ktime\_to\_ns

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`ktime_to_ns` — convert a `ktime_t` variable to scalar nanoseconds

## Synopsis

```
s64 ktime_to_ns (const ktime_t kt);
```

## Arguments

*kt*

the `ktime_t` variable to convert

## Description

Returns the scalar nanoseconds representation of *kt*

# ctime\_equal

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

### Name

ctime\_equal — Compares two ctime\_t variables to see if they are equal

### Synopsis

```
int ctime_equal (const ctime_t cmp1, const ctime_t cmp2);
```

### Arguments

*cmp1*

comparable1

*cmp2*

comparable2

### Description

Compare two ctime\_t variables, returns 1 if equal



# ktime\_compare

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`ktime_compare` — Compares two `ktime_t` variables for less, greater or equal

### Synopsis

```
int ktime_compare (const ktime_t cmp1, const ktime_t cmp2);
```

### Arguments

*cmp1*

comparable1

*cmp2*

comparable2

### Description

Returns ... `cmp1 < cmp2`: return `<0` `cmp1 == cmp2`: return `0` `cmp1 > cmp2`: return `>0`

# ktime\_after

## LINUX

## Name

`ktime_after` — Compare if a `ktime_t` value is bigger than another one.

## Synopsis

```
bool ktime_after (const ktime_t cmp1, const ktime_t cmp2);
```

## Arguments

*cmp1*

comparable1

*cmp2*

comparable2

## Return

true if *cmp1* happened after *cmp2*.

# ktime\_before

## LINUX

## Name

`ktime_before` — Compare if a `ktime_t` value is smaller than another one.

## Synopsis

```
bool ktime_before (const ktime_t cmp1, const ktime_t cmp2);
```

## Arguments

*cmp1*

comparable1

*cmp2*

comparable2

## Return

true if cmp1 happened before cmp2.

## struct hrtimer

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct hrtimer — the basic hrtimer structure

## Synopsis

```
struct hrtimer {
    struct timerqueue_node node;
    ktime_t _softexpires;
    enum hrtimer_restart (* function) (struct hrtimer *);
    struct hrtimer_clock_base * base;
```

```
    unsigned long state;
#ifdef CONFIG_TIMER_STATS
    int start_pid;
    void * start_site;
    char start_comm[16];
#endif
};
```

## Members

node

timerqueue node, which also manages node.expires, the absolute expiry time in the hrtimers internal representation. The time is related to the clock on which the timer is based. Is setup by adding slack to the \_softexpires value. For non range timers identical to \_softexpires.

\_softexpires

the absolute earliest expiry time of the hrtimer. The time which was given as expiry time when the timer was armed.

function

timer expiry callback function

base

pointer to the timer base (per cpu and per clock)

state

state information (See bit values above)

start\_pid

timer statistics field to store the pid of the task which started the timer

start\_site

timer statistics field to store the site where the timer was started

start\_comm[16]

timer statistics field to store the name of the process which started the timer

## Description

The `hrtimer` structure must be initialized by `hrtimer_init`

# struct hrtimer\_sleeper

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`struct hrtimer_sleeper` — simple sleeper structure

## Synopsis

```
struct hrtimer_sleeper {  
    struct hrtimer timer;  
    struct task_struct * task;  
};
```

## Members

`timer`

embedded timer structure

`task`

task to wake up

## Description

`task` is set to `NULL`, when the timer expires.

# struct hrtimer\_clock\_base

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct hrtimer\_clock\_base — the timer base for a specific clock

## Synopsis

```
struct hrtimer_clock_base {
    struct hrtimer_cpu_base * cpu_base;
    int index;
    clockid_t clockid;
    struct timerqueue_head active;
    ktime_t resolution;
    ktime_t (* get_time) (void);
    ktime_t softirq_time;
    ktime_t offset;
};
```

## Members

cpu\_base

per cpu clock base

index

clock type index for per\_cpu support when moving a timer to a base on another cpu.

clockid

clock id for per\_cpu support

active

red black tree root node for the active timers

resolution

the resolution of the clock, in nanoseconds

get\_time

function to retrieve the current time of the clock

softirq\_time

the time when running the hrtimer queue in the softirq

offset

offset of this clock to the monotonic base

## ctime\_add\_ns

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

### Name

ctime\_add\_ns — Add a scalar nanoseconds value to a ctime\_t variable

### Synopsis

```
ctime_t ctime_add_ns (const ctime_t kt, u64 nsec);
```

### Arguments

kt

addend

*nsec*

the scalar nsec value to add

## Description

Returns the sum of kt and nsec in ktime\_t format

# ktime\_sub\_ns

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

ktime\_sub\_ns — Subtract a scalar nanoseconds value from a ktime\_t variable

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t ktime_sub_ns (const ktime_t kt, u64 nsec);
```

## Arguments

*kt*

minuend

*nsec*

the scalar nsec value to subtract



## Description

Returns the subtraction of *nsec* from *kt* in *ktime\_t* format

# hrtimer\_forward

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`hrtimer_forward` — forward the timer expiry

## Synopsis

```
u64 hrtimer_forward (struct hrtimer * timer, ktime_t now,  
ktime_t interval);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

hrtimer to forward

*now*

forward past this time

*interval*

the interval to forward

## Description

Forward the timer expiry so it will expire in the future. Returns the number of overruns.

# hrtimer\_start\_range\_ns

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`hrtimer_start_range_ns` — (re)start an hrtimer on the current CPU

## Synopsis

```
int hrtimer_start_range_ns (struct hrtimer * timer, ktime_t  
tim, unsigned long delta_ns, const enum hrtimer_mode mode);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be added

*tim*

expiry time

*delta\_ns*

"slack" range for the timer

*mode*

expiry mode: absolute (HRTIMER\_ABS) or relative (HRTIMER\_REL)

## Returns

0 on success 1 when the timer was active

# hrtimer\_start

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`hrtimer_start` — (re)start an hrtimer on the current CPU

## Synopsis

```
int hrtimer_start (struct hrtimer * timer, ktime_t tim, const
enum hrtimer_mode mode);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be added

*tim*

expiry time

*mode*

expiry mode: absolute (HRTIMER\_ABS) or relative (HRTIMER\_REL)

## Returns

0 on success 1 when the timer was active

# hrtimer\_try\_to\_cancel

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`hrtimer_try_to_cancel` — try to deactivate a timer

## Synopsis

```
int hrtimer_try_to_cancel (struct hrtimer * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

hrtimer to stop

## Returns

0 when the timer was not active 1 when the timer was active -1 when the timer is currently excuting the callback function and cannot be stopped

# hrtimer\_cancel

**LINUX**

## Name

`hrtimer_cancel` — cancel a timer and wait for the handler to finish.

## Synopsis

```
int hrtimer_cancel (struct hrtimer * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be cancelled

## Returns

0 when the timer was not active 1 when the timer was active

# hrtimer\_get\_remaining

## LINUX

## Name

`hrtimer_get_remaining` — get remaining time for the timer

## Synopsis

```
ktime_t hrtimer_get_remaining (const struct hrtimer * timer);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to read

## hrtimer\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`hrtimer_init` — initialize a timer to the given clock

## Synopsis

```
void hrtimer_init (struct hrtimer * timer, clockid_t clock_id,  
enum hrtimer_mode mode);
```

## Arguments

*timer*

the timer to be initialized

*clock\_id*

the clock to be used

*mode*

timer mode abs/rel

## hrtimer\_get\_res

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`hrtimer_get_res` — get the timer resolution for a clock

### Synopsis

```
int hrtimer_get_res (const clockid_t which_clock, struct
timespec * tp);
```

### Arguments

*which\_clock*

which clock to query

*tp*

pointer to timespec variable to store the resolution

## Description

Store the resolution of the clock selected by *which\_clock* in the variable pointed to by *tp*.

# schedule\_hrtimeout\_range

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`schedule_hrtimeout_range` — sleep until timeout

## Synopsis

```
int __sched schedule_hrtimeout_range (ktime_t * expires,
unsigned long delta, const enum hrtimer_mode mode);
```

## Arguments

*expires*

timeout value (ktime\_t)

*delta*

slack in expires timeout (ktime\_t)

*mode*

timer mode, HRTIMER\_MODE\_ABS or HRTIMER\_MODE\_REL



## Description

Make the current task sleep until the given expiry time has elapsed. The routine will return immediately unless the current task state has been set (see `set_current_state`).

The *delta* argument gives the kernel the freedom to schedule the actual wakeup to a time that is both power and performance friendly. The kernel give the normal best effort behavior for “*expires+delta*”, but may decide to fire the timer earlier, but no earlier than *expires*.

You can set the task state as follows -

`TASK_UNINTERRUPTIBLE` - at least *timeout* time is guaranteed to pass before the routine returns.

`TASK_INTERRUPTIBLE` - the routine may return early if a signal is delivered to the current task.

The current task state is guaranteed to be `TASK_RUNNING` when this routine returns.

Returns 0 when the timer has expired otherwise `-EINTR`

## schedule\_hrtimeout

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`schedule_hrtimeout` — sleep until timeout

### Synopsis

```
int __sched schedule_hrtimeout (ktime_t * expires, const enum
hrtimer_mode mode);
```

## Arguments

*expires*

timeout value (ktime\_t)

*mode*

timer mode, HRTIMER\_MODE\_ABS or HRTIMER\_MODE\_REL

## Description

Make the current task sleep until the given expiry time has elapsed. The routine will return immediately unless the current task state has been set (see `set_current_state()`).

You can set the task state as follows -

`TASK_UNINTERRUPTIBLE` - at least *timeout* time is guaranteed to pass before the routine returns.

`TASK_INTERRUPTIBLE` - the routine may return early if a signal is delivered to the current task.

The current task state is guaranteed to be `TASK_RUNNING` when this routine returns.

Returns 0 when the timer has expired otherwise `-EINTR`

## 1.6. Workqueues and Kevents

### queue\_work

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`queue_work` — queue work on a workqueue

## Synopsis

```
int queue_work (struct workqueue_struct * wq, struct
work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*wq*

workqueue to use

*work*

work to queue

## Description

Returns 0 if *work* was already on a queue, non-zero otherwise.

We queue the work to the CPU on which it was submitted, but if the CPU dies it can be processed by another CPU.

# queue\_work\_on

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

queue\_work\_on — queue work on specific cpu

## Synopsis

```
int queue_work_on (int cpu, struct workqueue_struct * wq,  
struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*cpu*

CPU number to execute work on

*wq*

workqueue to use

*work*

work to queue

## Description

Returns 0 if *work* was already on a queue, non-zero otherwise.

We queue the work to a specific CPU, the caller must ensure it can't go away.

# queue\_delayed\_work

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`queue_delayed_work` — queue work on a workqueue after delay

## Synopsis

```
int queue_delayed_work (struct workqueue_struct * wq, struct
delayed_work * dwork, unsigned long delay);
```

## Arguments

*wq*

workqueue to use

*dwork*

delayable work to queue

*delay*

number of jiffies to wait before queueing

## Description

Returns 0 if *work* was already on a queue, non-zero otherwise.

# queue\_delayed\_work\_on

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

queue\_delayed\_work\_on — queue work on specific CPU after delay

## Synopsis

```
int queue_delayed_work_on (int cpu, struct workqueue_struct *  
wq, struct delayed_work * dwork, unsigned long delay);
```

## Arguments

*cpu*

CPU number to execute work on

*wq*

workqueue to use

*dwork*

work to queue

*delay*

number of jiffies to wait before queueing

## Description

Returns 0 if *work* was already on a queue, non-zero otherwise.

# flush\_workqueue

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_workqueue` — ensure that any scheduled work has run to completion.

## Synopsis

```
void flush_workqueue (struct workqueue_struct * wq);
```

## Arguments

*wq*

workqueue to flush

## Description

Forces execution of the workqueue and blocks until its completion. This is typically used in driver shutdown handlers.

We sleep until all works which were queued on entry have been handled, but we are not livelocked by new incoming ones.

# drain\_workqueue

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`drain_workqueue` — drain a workqueue

## Synopsis

```
void drain_workqueue (struct workqueue_struct * wq);
```

## Arguments

*wq*

workqueue to drain

## Description

Wait until the workqueue becomes empty. While draining is in progress, only chain queueing is allowed. IOW, only currently pending or running work items on *wq* can queue further work items on it. *wq* is flushed repeatedly until it becomes empty. The number of flushing is determined by the depth of chaining and should be relatively short. Whine if it takes too long.

## flush\_work

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_work` — wait for a work to finish executing the last queueing instance

## Synopsis

```
bool flush_work (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

the work to flush



## Description

Wait until *work* has finished execution. This function considers only the last queueing instance of *work*. If *work* has been enqueued across different CPUs on a non-reentrant workqueue or on multiple workqueues, *work* might still be executing on return on some of the CPUs from earlier queueing.

If *work* was queued only on a non-reentrant, ordered or unbound workqueue, *work* is guaranteed to be idle on return if it hasn't been requeued since flush started.

## RETURNS

true if `flush_work` waited for the work to finish execution, false if it was already idle.

# flush\_work\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_work_sync` — wait until a work has finished execution

## Synopsis

```
bool flush_work_sync (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

the work to flush

## Description

Wait until *work* has finished execution. On return, it's guaranteed that all queueing instances of *work* which happened before this function is called are finished. In other words, if *work* hasn't been requeued since this function was called, *work* is guaranteed to be idle on return.

## RETURNS

true if `flush_work_sync` waited for the work to finish execution, false if it was already idle.

# cancel\_work\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`cancel_work_sync` — cancel a work and wait for it to finish

## Synopsis

```
bool cancel_work_sync (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

the work to cancel

## Description

Cancel *work* and wait for its execution to finish. This function can be used even if the work re-queues itself or migrates to another workqueue. On return from this function, *work* is guaranteed to be not pending or executing on any CPU.

`cancel_work_sync(delayed_work->work)` must not be used for `delayed_work`'s. Use `cancel_delayed_work_sync` instead.

The caller must ensure that the workqueue on which *work* was last queued can't be destroyed before this function returns.

## RETURNS

true if *work* was pending, false otherwise.

# flush\_delayed\_work

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_delayed_work` — wait for a `dwork` to finish executing the last queueing

## Synopsis

```
bool flush_delayed_work (struct delayed_work * dwork);
```

## Arguments

*dwork*

the delayed work to flush

## Description

Delayed timer is cancelled and the pending work is queued for immediate execution. Like `flush_work`, this function only considers the last queueing instance of `dwork`.

## RETURNS

`true` if `flush_work` waited for the work to finish execution, `false` if it was already idle.

# flush\_delayed\_work\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_delayed_work_sync` — wait for a `dwork` to finish

## Synopsis

```
bool flush_delayed_work_sync (struct delayed_work * dwork);
```

## Arguments

*dwork*

the delayed work to flush

## Description

Delayed timer is cancelled and the pending work is queued for execution immediately. Other than timer handling, its behavior is identical to `flush_work_sync`.

## RETURNS

`true` if `flush_work_sync` waited for the work to finish execution, `false` if it was already idle.

# cancel\_delayed\_work\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`cancel_delayed_work_sync` — cancel a delayed work and wait for it to finish

## Synopsis

```
bool cancel_delayed_work_sync (struct delayed_work * dwork);
```

## Arguments

*dwork*

the delayed work cancel

## Description

This is `cancel_work_sync` for delayed works.

## RETURNS

true if *dwork* was pending, false otherwise.

# schedule\_work

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`schedule_work` — put work task in global workqueue

## Synopsis

```
int schedule_work (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

job to be done

## Description

Returns zero if *work* was already on the kernel-global workqueue and non-zero otherwise.

This puts a job in the kernel-global workqueue if it was not already queued and leaves it in the same position on the kernel-global workqueue otherwise.

## schedule\_delayed\_work

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`schedule_delayed_work` — put work task in global workqueue after delay

### Synopsis

```
int schedule_delayed_work (struct delayed_work * dwork,  
unsigned long delay);
```

### Arguments

*dwork*

job to be done

*delay*

number of jiffies to wait or 0 for immediate execution

### Description

After waiting for a given time this puts a job in the kernel-global workqueue.

# schedule\_delayed\_work\_on

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`schedule_delayed_work_on` — queue work in global workqueue on CPU after delay

### Synopsis

```
int schedule_delayed_work_on (int cpu, struct delayed_work *  
dwork, unsigned long delay);
```

### Arguments

*cpu*

cpu to use

*dwork*

job to be done

*delay*

number of jiffies to wait

### Description

After waiting for a given time this puts a job in the kernel-global workqueue on the specified CPU.



# flush\_scheduled\_work

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`flush_scheduled_work` — ensure that any scheduled work has run to completion.

### Synopsis

```
void flush_scheduled_work ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Forces execution of the kernel-global workqueue and blocks until its completion.

Think twice before calling this function! It's very easy to get into trouble if you don't take great care. Either of the following situations

### will lead to deadlock

One of the work items currently on the workqueue needs to acquire a lock held by your code or its caller.

Your code is running in the context of a work routine.

They will be detected by lockdep when they occur, but the first might not occur very often. It depends on what work items are on the workqueue and what locks they need, which you have no control over.

In most situations flushing the entire workqueue is overkill; you merely need to know that a particular work item isn't queued and isn't running. In such cases you should use `cancel_delayed_work_sync` or `cancel_work_sync` instead.

## execute\_in\_process\_context

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`execute_in_process_context` — reliably execute the routine with user context

### Synopsis

```
int execute_in_process_context (work_func_t fn, struct  
execute_work * ew);
```

### Arguments

*fn*

the function to execute

*ew*

guaranteed storage for the execute work structure (must be available when the work executes)

## Description

Executes the function immediately if process context is available, otherwise schedules the function for delayed execution.

## Returns

0 - function was executed 1 - function was scheduled for execution

# destroy\_workqueue

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`destroy_workqueue` — safely terminate a workqueue

## Synopsis

```
void destroy_workqueue (struct workqueue_struct * wq);
```

## Arguments

*wq*  
target workqueue

## Description

Safely destroy a workqueue. All work currently pending will be done first.

# workqueue\_set\_max\_active

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`workqueue_set_max_active` — adjust `max_active` of a workqueue

### Synopsis

```
void workqueue_set_max_active (struct workqueue_struct * wq,  
int max_active);
```

### Arguments

*wq*

target workqueue

*max\_active*

new `max_active` value.

### Description

Set `max_active` of *wq* to *max\_active*.

### CONTEXT

Don't call from IRQ context.

# workqueue\_congested

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`workqueue_congested` — test whether a workqueue is congested

### Synopsis

```
bool workqueue_congested (unsigned int cpu, struct  
workqueue_struct * wq);
```

### Arguments

*cpu*

CPU in question

*wq*

target workqueue

### Description

Test whether *wq*'s cpu workqueue for *cpu* is congested. There is no synchronization around this function and the test result is unreliable and only useful as advisory hints or for debugging.

### RETURNS

true if congested, false otherwise.

# work\_cpu

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`work_cpu` — return the last known associated cpu for *work*

### Synopsis

```
unsigned int work_cpu (struct work_struct * work);
```

### Arguments

*work*

the work of interest

### RETURNS

CPU number if *work* was ever queued. `WORK_CPU_NONE` otherwise.

# work\_busy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`work_busy` — test whether a work is currently pending or running

## Synopsis

```
unsigned int work_busy (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

the work to be tested

## Description

Test whether *work* is currently pending or running. There is no synchronization around this function and the test result is unreliable and only useful as advisory hints or for debugging. Especially for reentrant wqs, the pending state might hide the running state.

## RETURNS

OR'd bitmask of `WORK_BUSY_*` bits.

## work\_on\_cpu

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`work_on_cpu` — run a function in user context on a particular cpu

## Synopsis

```
long work_on_cpu (unsigned int cpu, long (*fn) (void *), void  
* arg);
```

## Arguments

*cpu*

the cpu to run on

*fn*

the function to run

*arg*

the function arg

## Description

This will return the value *fn* returns. It is up to the caller to ensure that the cpu doesn't go offline. The caller must not hold any locks which would prevent *fn* from completing.

## 1.7. Internal Functions

### reparent\_to\_kthreadd

**LINUX**



## Name

`reparent_to_kthreadd` — Reparent the calling kernel thread to `kthreadd`

## Synopsis

```
void reparent_to_kthreadd ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

If a kernel thread is launched as a result of a system call, or if it ever exits, it should generally reparent itself to `kthreadd` so it isn't in the way of other processes and is correctly cleaned up on exit.

The various task state such as scheduling policy and priority may have been inherited from a user process, so we reset them to sane values here.

NOTE that `reparent_to_kthreadd` gives the caller full capabilities.

## `wait_task_stopped`

**LINUX**

## Name

`wait_task_stopped` — Wait for `TASK_STOPPED` or `TASK_TRACED`

## Synopsis

```
int wait_task_stopped (struct wait_opts * wo, int ptrace,  
struct task_struct * p);
```

## Arguments

*wo*

wait options

*ptrace*

is the wait for ptrace

*p*

task to wait for

## Description

Handle `sys_wait4` work for `p` in state `TASK_STOPPED` or `TASK_TRACED`.

## CONTEXT

`read_lock(tasklist_lock)`, which is released if return value is non-zero. Also, grabs and releases `p->sigband->siglock`.

## RETURNS

0 if wait condition didn't exist and search for other wait conditions should continue. Non-zero return, -errno on failure and *p*'s pid on success, implies that tasklist\_lock is released and wait condition search should terminate.

## task\_clear\_group\_stop\_trapping

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`task_clear_group_stop_trapping` — clear group stop trapping bit

### Synopsis

```
void task_clear_group_stop_trapping (struct task_struct *
task);
```

### Arguments

*task*

target task

### Description

If GROUP\_STOP\_TRAPPING is set, a ptracer is waiting for us. Clear it and wake up the ptracer. Note that we don't need any further locking. *task*->siglock guarantees that *task*->parent points to the ptracer.

## CONTEXT

Must be called with *task->sigband->siglock* held.

# task\_clear\_group\_stop\_pending

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

*task\_clear\_group\_stop\_pending* — clear pending group stop

## Synopsis

```
void task_clear_group_stop_pending (struct task_struct *  
task);
```

## Arguments

*task*

target task

## Description

Clear group stop states for *task*.

## CONTEXT

Must be called with *task->sigband->siglock* held.

# task\_participate\_group\_stop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`task_participate_group_stop` — participate in a group stop

### Synopsis

```
bool task_participate_group_stop (struct task_struct * task);
```

### Arguments

*task*

task participating in a group stop

### Description

*task* has `GROUP_STOP_PENDING` set and is participating in a group stop. Group stop states are cleared and the group stop count is consumed if `GROUP_STOP_CONSUME` was set. If the consumption completes the group stop, the appropriate `SIGNAL_*` flags are set.

### CONTEXT

Must be called with *task*->sigband->siglock held.

## RETURNS

`true` if group stop completion should be notified to the parent, `false` otherwise.

# do\_notify\_parent\_cldstop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`do_notify_parent_cldstop` — notify parent of stopped/continued state change

## Synopsis

```
void do_notify_parent_cldstop (struct task_struct * tsk, bool
for_ptracer, int why);
```

## Arguments

*tsk*

task reporting the state change

*for\_ptracer*

the notification is for ptracer

*why*

`CLD_{CONTINUED|STOPPED|TRAPPED}` to report

## Description

Notify *tsk*'s parent that the stopped/continued state has changed. If *for\_ptracer* is false, *tsk*'s group leader notifies to its real parent. If true, *tsk* reports to *tsk->parent* which should be the ptracer.

## CONTEXT

Must be called with `tasklist_lock` at least read locked.

# sys\_restart\_syscall

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sys_restart_syscall` — restart a system call

## Synopsis

```
long sys_restart_syscall ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

# set\_current\_blocked

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

set\_current\_blocked — change current->blocked mask

### Synopsis

```
void set_current_blocked (const sigset_t * newset);
```

### Arguments

*newset*

new mask

### Description

It is wrong to change ->blocked directly, this helper should be used to ensure the process can't miss a shared signal we are going to block.

# sys\_rt\_sigprocmask

## LINUX



## Name

`sys_rt_sigprocmask` — change the list of currently blocked signals

## Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigprocmask (int how, sigset_t __user * nset,  
sigset_t __user * oset, size_t sigsetsize);
```

## Arguments

*how*

whether to add, remove, or set signals

*nset*

stores pending signals

*oset*

previous value of signal mask if non-null

*sigsetsize*

size of sigset\_t type

## sys\_rt\_sigpending

**LINUX**

## Name

`sys_rt_sigpending` — examine a pending signal that has been raised while blocked

## Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigpending (sigset_t __user * set, size_t  
sigsetsize);
```

## Arguments

*set*

stores pending signals

*sigsetsize*

size of sigset\_t type or larger

# do\_sigtimedwait

## LINUX

## Name

`do_sigtimedwait` — wait for queued signals specified in *which*

## Synopsis

```
int do_sigtimedwait (const sigset_t * which, siginfo_t * info,
const struct timespec * ts);
```

## Arguments

*which*

queued signals to wait for

*info*

if non-null, the signal's siginfo is returned here

*ts*

upper bound on process time suspension

## sys\_rt\_sigtimedwait

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sys_rt_sigtimedwait` — synchronously wait for queued signals specified in *uthese*

## Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigtimedwait (const sigset_t __user * uthese,
siginfo_t __user * uinfo, const struct timespec __user * uts,
size_t sigsetsize);
```

## Arguments

*uthese*

queued signals to wait for

*uinfo*

if non-null, the signal's siginfo is returned here

*uts*

upper bound on process time suspension

*sigsetsize*

size of sigset\_t type

## sys\_kill

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`sys_kill` — send a signal to a process

### Synopsis

```
long sys_kill (pid_t pid, int sig);
```

## Arguments

*pid*

the PID of the process

*sig*

signal to be sent

## sys\_tgkill

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sys_tgkill` — send signal to one specific thread

## Synopsis

```
long sys_tgkill (pid_t tgid, pid_t pid, int sig);
```

## Arguments

*tgid*

the thread group ID of the thread

*pid*

the PID of the thread

*sig*

signal to be sent

## Description

This syscall also checks the *tgid* and returns -ESRCH even if the PID exists but it's not belonging to the target process anymore. This method solves the problem of threads exiting and PIDs getting reused.

# sys\_tkill

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sys_tkill` — send signal to one specific task

## Synopsis

```
long sys_tkill (pid_t pid, int sig);
```

## Arguments

*pid*

the PID of the task

*sig*

signal to be sent

## Description

Send a signal to only one task, even if it's a CLONE\_THREAD task.

# sys\_rt\_sigqueueinfo

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`sys_rt_sigqueueinfo` — send signal information to a signal

### Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigqueueinfo (pid_t pid, int sig, siginfo_t __user  
* uinfo);
```

### Arguments

*pid*

the PID of the thread

*sig*

signal to be sent

*uinfo*

signal info to be sent

# sys\_sigpending

## LINUX

## Name

`sys_sigpending` — examine pending signals

## Synopsis

```
long sys_sigpending (old_sigset_t __user * set);
```

## Arguments

*set*

where mask of pending signal is returned

# sys\_sigprocmask

## LINUX

## Name

`sys_sigprocmask` — examine and change blocked signals

## Synopsis

```
long sys_sigprocmask (int how, old_sigset_t __user * nset,  
old_sigset_t __user * oset);
```



## Arguments

*how*

whether to add, remove, or set signals

*nset*

signals to add or remove (if non-null)

*oset*

previous value of signal mask if non-null

## Description

Some platforms have their own version with special arguments; others support only `sys_rt_sigprocmask`.

# sys\_rt\_sigaction

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sys_rt_sigaction` — alter an action taken by a process

## Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigaction (int sig, const struct sigaction __user
* act, struct sigaction __user * oact, size_t sigsetsize);
```

## Arguments

<i>sig</i>	signal to be sent
<i>act</i>	new sigaction
<i>oact</i>	used to save the previous sigaction
<i>sigsetsize</i>	size of sigset_t type

## sys\_rt\_sigsuspend

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`sys_rt_sigsuspend` — replace the signal mask for a value with the *unewset* value until a signal is received

### Synopsis

```
long sys_rt_sigsuspend (sigset_t __user * unewset, size_t  
sigsetsize);
```

## Arguments

*unewset*

new signal mask value

*sigsetsize*

size of sigset\_t type

## kthread\_run

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kthread_run` — create and wake a thread.

## Synopsis

```
kthread_run ( threadfn, data, namefmt, ... );
```

## Arguments

*threadfn*

the function to run until `signal_pending(current)`.

*data*

data ptr for *threadfn*.

*namefmt*

printf-style name for the thread.

...

variable arguments

## Description

Convenient wrapper for `kthread_create` followed by `wake_up_process`.  
Returns the `kthread` or `ERR_PTR(-ENOMEM)`.

# kthread\_should\_stop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kthread_should_stop` — should this `kthread` return now?

## Synopsis

```
int kthread_should_stop ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

When someone calls `kthread_stop` on your `kthread`, it will be woken and this will return `true`. You should then return, and your return value will be passed through to `kthread_stop`.

## kthread\_create\_on\_node

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kthread_create_on_node` — create a `kthread`.

### Synopsis

```
struct task_struct * kthread_create_on_node (int (*threadfn)
(void *data), void * data, int node, const char namefmt[],
...);
```

### Arguments

*threadfn*

the function to run until `signal_pending(current)`.

*data*

data ptr for *threadfn*.

*node*

memory node number.

*namefmt* []

printf-style name for the thread.

...

variable arguments

## Description

This helper function creates and names a kernel thread. The thread will be stopped: use `wake_up_process` to start it. See also `kthread_run`.

If thread is going to be bound on a particular cpu, give its node in `node`, to get NUMA affinity for kthread stack, or else give -1. When woken, the thread will run `threadfn()` with `data` as its argument. `threadfn()` can either call `do_exit` directly if it is a standalone thread for which no one will call `kthread_stop`, or return when '`kthread_should_stop`' is true (which means `kthread_stop` has been called). The return value should be zero or a negative error number; it will be passed to `kthread_stop`.

Returns a `task_struct` or `ERR_PTR(-ENOMEM)`.

## kthread\_bind

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kthread_bind` — bind a just-created kthread to a cpu.

### Synopsis

```
void kthread_bind (struct task_struct * p, unsigned int cpu);
```

## Arguments

*p*

thread created by `kthread_create`.

*cpu*

cpu (might not be online, must be possible) for *k* to run on.

## Description

This function is equivalent to `set_cpus_allowed`, except that *cpu* doesn't need to be online, and the thread must be stopped (i.e., just returned from `kthread_create`).

# kthread\_stop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kthread_stop` — stop a thread created by `kthread_create`.

## Synopsis

```
int kthread_stop (struct task_struct * k);
```

## Arguments

*k*

thread created by `kthread_create`.

## Description

Sets `kthread_should_stop` for `k` to return true, wakes it, and waits for it to exit. This can also be called after `kthread_create` instead of calling `wake_up_process`: the thread will exit without calling `threadfn`.

If `threadfn` may call `do_exit` itself, the caller must ensure `task_struct` can't go away.

Returns the result of `threadfn`, or `-EINTR` if `wake_up_process` was never called.

## kthread\_worker\_fn

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kthread_worker_fn` — kthread function to process `kthread_worker`

### Synopsis

```
int kthread_worker_fn (void * worker_ptr);
```

### Arguments

*worker\_ptr*

pointer to initialized `kthread_worker`



## Description

This function can be used as *threadfn* to `kthread_create` or `kthread_run` with *worker\_ptr* argument pointing to an initialized `kthread_worker`. The started `kthread` will process `work_list` until the it is stopped with `kthread_stop`. A `kthread` can also call this function directly after extra initialization.

Different `kthreads` can be used for the same `kthread_worker` as long as there's only one `kthread` attached to it at any given time. A `kthread_worker` without an attached `kthread` simply collects queued `kthread_works`.

## queue\_kthread\_work

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`queue_kthread_work` — queue a `kthread_work`

### Synopsis

```
bool queue_kthread_work (struct kthread_worker * worker,
struct kthread_work * work);
```

### Arguments

*worker*

target `kthread_worker`

*work*

`kthread_work` to queue

## Description

Queue *work* to work processor *task* for async execution. *task* must have been created with `kthread_worker_create`. Returns `true` if *work* was successfully queued, `false` if it was already pending.

# flush\_kthread\_work

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`flush_kthread_work` — flush a `kthread_work`

## Synopsis

```
void flush_kthread_work (struct kthread_work * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

work to flush

## Description

If *work* is queued or executing, wait for it to finish execution.

# flush\_kthread\_worker

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`flush_kthread_worker` — flush all current works on a `kthread_worker`

### Synopsis

```
void flush_kthread_worker (struct kthread_worker * worker);
```

### Arguments

*worker*

worker to flush

### Description

Wait until all currently executing or pending works on *worker* are finished.

## 1.8. Kernel objects manipulation

### kobject\_get\_path

## LINUX

## Name

`kobject_get_path` — generate and return the path associated with a given `kobj` and `kset` pair.

## Synopsis

```
char * kobject_get_path (struct kobject * kobj, gfp_t  
gfp_mask);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

kobject in question, with which to build the path

*gfp\_mask*

the allocation type used to allocate the path

## Description

The result must be freed by the caller with `kfree`.

# kobject\_set\_name

**LINUX**

## Name

`kobject_set_name` — Set the name of a kobject

## Synopsis

```
int kobject_set_name (struct kobject * kobj, const char * fmt,  
...);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

struct kobject to set the name of

*fmt*

format string used to build the name

...

variable arguments

## Description

This sets the name of the kobject. If you have already added the kobject to the system, you must call `kobject_rename` in order to change the name of the kobject.

## kobject\_init

**LINUX**

## Name

`kobject_init` — initialize a kobject structure

## Synopsis

```
void kobject_init (struct kobject * kobj, struct kobj_type *  
ktype);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

pointer to the kobject to initialize

*ktype*

pointer to the ktype for this kobject.

## Description

This function will properly initialize a kobject such that it can then be passed to the `kobject_add` call.

After this function is called, the kobject **MUST** be cleaned up by a call to `kobject_put`, not by a call to `kfree` directly to ensure that all of the memory is cleaned up properly.

## `kobject_add`

**LINUX**

## Name

`kobject_add` — the main `kobject` add function

## Synopsis

```
int kobject_add (struct kobject * kobj, struct kobject *  
parent, const char * fmt, ...);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

the `kobject` to add

*parent*

pointer to the parent of the `kobject`.

*fmt*

format to name the `kobject` with.

...

variable arguments

## Description

The `kobject` name is set and added to the `kobject` hierarchy in this function.

If *parent* is set, then the parent of the *kobj* will be set to it. If *parent* is `NULL`, then the parent of the *kobj* will be set to the `kobject` associated with the `kset` assigned to this `kobject`. If no `kset` is assigned to the `kobject`, then the `kobject` will be located in the root of the `sysfs` tree.

If this function returns an error, `kobject_put` must be called to properly clean up the memory associated with the object. Under no instance should the `kobject` that is passed to this function be directly freed with a call to `kfree`, that can leak memory.

Note, no “add” uevent will be created with this call, the caller should set up all of the necessary sysfs files for the object and then call `kobject_uevent` with the `UEVENT_ADD` parameter to ensure that userspace is properly notified of this kobject’s creation.

## kobject\_init\_and\_add

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kobject_init_and_add` — initialize a kobject structure and add it to the kobject hierarchy

### Synopsis

```
int kobject_init_and_add (struct kobject * kobj, struct
kobj_type * ktype, struct kobject * parent, const char * fmt,
...);
```

### Arguments

*kobj*

pointer to the kobject to initialize

*ktype*

pointer to the ktype for this kobject.

*parent*

pointer to the parent of this kobject.



*fmt*

the name of the kobject.

...

variable arguments

## Description

This function combines the call to `kobject_init` and `kobject_add`. The same type of error handling after a call to `kobject_add` and kobject lifetime rules are the same here.

# kobject\_rename

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kobject_rename` — change the name of an object

## Synopsis

```
int kobject_rename (struct kobject * kobj, const char *
new_name);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

object in question.

*new\_name*

object's new name

## Description

It is the responsibility of the caller to provide mutual exclusion between two different calls of `kobject_rename` on the same `kobject` and to ensure that `new_name` is valid and won't conflict with other `kobjects`.

# kobject\_del

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kobject_del` — unlink `kobject` from hierarchy.

## Synopsis

```
void kobject_del (struct kobject * kobj);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

object.

# kobject\_get

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kobject_get` — increment refcount for object.

### Synopsis

```
struct kobject * kobject_get (struct kobject * kobj);
```

### Arguments

*kobj*

object.

# kobject\_put

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kobject_put` — decrement refcount for object.

## Synopsis

```
void kobject_put (struct kobject * kobj);
```

## Arguments

*kobj*

object.

## Description

Decrement the refcount, and if 0, call `kobject_cleanup`.

# kobject\_create\_and\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kobject_create_and_add` — create a struct kobject dynamically and register it with sysfs

## Synopsis

```
struct kobject * kobject_create_and_add (const char * name,  
struct kobject * parent);
```

## Arguments

*name*

the name for the kset

*parent*

the parent kobject of this kobject, if any.

## Description

This function creates a kobject structure dynamically and registers it with sysfs.

When you are finished with this structure, call `kobject_put` and the structure will be dynamically freed when it is no longer being used.

If the kobject was not able to be created, `NULL` will be returned.

## kset\_register

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`kset_register` — initialize and add a kset.

### Synopsis

```
int kset_register (struct kset * k);
```

## Arguments

*k*

kset.

## kset\_unregister

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

kset\_unregister — remove a kset.

### Synopsis

```
void kset_unregister (struct kset * k);
```

### Arguments

*k*

kset.

## kset\_create\_and\_add

### LINUX

## Name

`kset_create_and_add` — create a struct kset dynamically and add it to sysfs

## Synopsis

```
struct kset * kset_create_and_add (const char * name, const  
struct kset_uevent_ops * uevent_ops, struct kobject *  
parent_kobj);
```

## Arguments

*name*

the name for the kset

*uevent\_ops*

a struct kset\_uevent\_ops for the kset

*parent\_kobj*

the parent kobject of this kset, if any.

## Description

This function creates a kset structure dynamically and registers it with sysfs. When you are finished with this structure, call `kset_unregister` and the structure will be dynamically freed when it is no longer being used.

If the kset was not able to be created, NULL will be returned.

## 1.9. Kernel utility functions

### upper\_32\_bits

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`upper_32_bits` — return bits 32-63 of a number

#### Synopsis

```
upper_32_bits ( n );
```

#### Arguments

*n*

the number we're accessing

#### Description

A basic shift-right of a 64- or 32-bit quantity. Use this to suppress the “right shift count  $\geq$  width of type” warning when that quantity is 32-bits.

### lower\_32\_bits

**LINUX**



## Name

`lower_32_bits` — return bits 0-31 of a number

## Synopsis

```
lower_32_bits ( n );
```

## Arguments

*n*

the number we're accessing

# might\_sleep

## LINUX

## Name

`might_sleep` — annotation for functions that can sleep

## Synopsis

```
might_sleep (void);
```

## Arguments

None

## Description

this macro will print a stack trace if it is executed in an atomic context (spinlock, irq-handler, ...).

This is a useful debugging help to be able to catch problems early and not be bitten later when the calling function happens to sleep when it is not supposed to.

# trace\_printk

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`trace_printk` — printf formatting in the ftrace buffer

## Synopsis

```
trace_printk ( fmt,  args... );
```

## Arguments

*fmt*

the printf format for printing

*args...*

variable arguments

## Note

`__trace_printk` is an internal function for `trace_printk` and the `ip` is passed in via the `trace_printk` macro.

This function allows a kernel developer to debug fast path sections that `printk` is not appropriate for. By scattering in various `printk` like tracing in the code, a developer can quickly see where problems are occurring.

This is intended as a debugging tool for the developer only. Please refrain from leaving `trace_printks` scattered around in your code.

## min\_not\_zero

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`min_not_zero` — return the minimum that is `_not_ zero`, unless both are zero

## Synopsis

```
min_not_zero ( x,   y );
```

## Arguments

*x*

value1

*y*

value2

# clamp

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`clamp` — return a value clamped to a given range with strict typechecking

### Synopsis

```
clamp ( val, min, max );
```

### Arguments

*val*

current value

*min*

minimum allowable value

*max*

maximum allowable value

### Description

This macro does strict typechecking of min/max to make sure they are of the same type as val. See the unnecessary pointer comparisons.

# clamp\_t

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`clamp_t` — return a value clamped to a given range using a given type

### Synopsis

```
clamp_t ( type, val, min, max );
```

### Arguments

*type*

the type of variable to use

*val*

current value

*min*

minimum allowable value

*max*

maximum allowable value

### Description

This macro does no typechecking and uses temporary variables of type 'type' to make all the comparisons.

# clamp\_val

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`clamp_val` — return a value clamped to a given range using `val`'s type

### Synopsis

```
clamp_val ( val, min, max );
```

### Arguments

*val*

current value

*min*

minimum allowable value

*max*

maximum allowable value

### Description

This macro does no typechecking and uses temporary variables of whatever type the input argument '`val`' is. This is useful when `val` is an unsigned type and `min` and `max` are literals that will otherwise be assigned a signed integer type.

# container\_of

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`container_of` — cast a member of a structure out to the containing structure

### Synopsis

```
container_of ( ptr,  type,  member);
```

### Arguments

*ptr*

the pointer to the member.

*type*

the type of the container struct this is embedded in.

*member*

the name of the member within the struct.

# BUILD\_BUG\_ON

## LINUX

## Name

`BUILD_BUG_ON` — break compile if a condition is true.

## Synopsis

```
BUILD_BUG_ON ( condition );
```

## Arguments

*condition*

the condition which the compiler should know is false.

## Description

If you have some code which relies on certain constants being equal, or other compile-time-evaluated condition, you should use `BUILD_BUG_ON` to detect if someone changes it.

The implementation uses gcc's reluctance to create a negative array, but gcc (as of 4.4) only emits that error for obvious cases (eg. not arguments to inline functions). So as a fallback we use the optimizer; if it can't prove the condition is false, it will cause a link error on the undefined "`__build_bug_on_failed`". This error message can be harder to track down though, hence the two different methods.

**printk**

**LINUX**



## Name

`printk` — print a kernel message

## Synopsis

```
int printk (const char * fmt,  ...);
```

## Arguments

*fmt*

format string

...

variable arguments

## Description

This is `printk`. It can be called from any context. We want it to work.

We try to grab the `console_lock`. If we succeed, it's easy - we log the output and call the console drivers. If we fail to get the semaphore we place the output into the log buffer and return. The current holder of the `console_sem` will notice the new output in `console_unlock`; and will send it to the consoles before releasing the lock.

One effect of this deferred printing is that code which calls `printk` and then changes `console_loglevel` may break. This is because `console_loglevel` is inspected when the actual printing occurs.

## See also

`printf(3)`

See the `vsnprintf` documentation for format string extensions over C99.

# console\_lock

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`console_lock` — lock the console system for exclusive use.

## Synopsis

```
void console_lock ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Acquires a lock which guarantees that the caller has exclusive access to the console system and the `console_drivers` list.

Can sleep, returns nothing.

# console\_trylock

**LINUX**

## Name

`console_trylock` — try to lock the console system for exclusive use.

## Synopsis

```
int console_trylock ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Tried to acquire a lock which guarantees that the caller has exclusive access to the console system and the `console_drivers` list.

returns 1 on success, and 0 on failure to acquire the lock.

# console\_conditional\_schedule

## LINUX

## Name

`console_conditional_schedule` — yield the CPU if required

## Synopsis

```
void __sched console_conditional_schedule ( void);
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

If the console code is currently allowed to sleep, and if this CPU should yield the CPU to another task, do so here.

Must be called within `console_lock`;

# printk\_timed\_ratelimit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`printk_timed_ratelimit` — caller-controlled printk ratelimiting

## Synopsis

```
bool printk_timed_ratelimit (unsigned long * caller_jiffies,  
unsigned int interval_msecs);
```

## Arguments

*caller\_jiffies*

pointer to caller's state

*interval\_msecs*

minimum interval between prints

## Description

`printk_timed_ratelimit` returns true if more than *interval\_msecs* milliseconds have elapsed since the last time `printk_timed_ratelimit` returned true.

# kmsg\_dump\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kmsg_dump_register` — register a kernel log dumper.

## Synopsis

```
int kmsg_dump_register (struct kmsg_dumper * dumper);
```

## Arguments

*dumper*

pointer to the `kmsg_dumper` structure

## Description

Adds a kernel log dumper to the system. The dump callback in the structure will be called when the kernel oopses or panics and must be set. Returns zero on success and `-EINVAL` or `-EBUSY` otherwise.

# kmsg\_dump\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kmsg_dump_unregister` — unregister a kmsg dumper.

## Synopsis

```
int kmsg_dump_unregister (struct kmsg_dumper * dumper);
```

## Arguments

*dumper*

pointer to the `kmsg_dumper` structure

## Description

Removes a dump device from the system. Returns zero on success and `-EINVAL` otherwise.

# panic

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`panic` — halt the system

### Synopsis

```
NORET_TYPE void panic (const char * fmt, ...);
```

### Arguments

*fmt*

The text string to print

...

variable arguments

### Description

Display a message, then perform cleanups.

This function never returns.

# emergency\_restart

## LINUX

## Name

`emergency_restart` — reboot the system

## Synopsis

```
void emergency_restart ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Without shutting down any hardware or taking any locks reboot the system. This is called when we know we are in trouble so this is our best effort to reboot. This is safe to call in interrupt context.

# kernel\_restart

## LINUX

## Name

`kernel_restart` — reboot the system



## Synopsis

```
void kernel_restart (char * cmd);
```

## Arguments

*cmd*

pointer to buffer containing command to execute for restart or `NULL`

## Description

Shutdown everything and perform a clean reboot. This is not safe to call in interrupt context.

## kernel\_halt

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`kernel_halt` — halt the system

## Synopsis

```
void kernel_halt ( void);
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Shutdown everything and perform a clean system halt.

# kernel\_power\_off

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

kernel\_power\_off — power\_off the system

## Synopsis

```
void kernel_power_off ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Shutdown everything and perform a clean system power\_off.

# orderly\_poweroff

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`orderly_poweroff` — Trigger an orderly system poweroff

### Synopsis

```
int orderly_poweroff (bool force);
```

### Arguments

*force*

force poweroff if command execution fails

### Description

This may be called from any context to trigger a system shutdown. If the orderly shutdown fails, it will force an immediate shutdown.

# rcu\_read\_lock\_bh\_held

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`rcu_read_lock_bh_held` — might we be in RCU-bh read-side critical section?

### Synopsis

```
int rcu_read_lock_bh_held ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Check for bottom half being disabled, which covers both the `CONFIG_PROVE_RCU` and not cases. Note that if someone uses `rcu_read_lock_bh`, but then later enables BH, lockdep (if enabled) will show the situation. This is useful for debug checks in functions that require that they be called within an RCU read-side critical section.

Check `debug_lockdep_rcu_enabled` to prevent false positives during boot.

# init\_rcu\_head\_on\_stack

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`init_rcu_head_on_stack` — initialize on-stack `rcu_head` for debugobjects

### Synopsis

```
void init_rcu_head_on_stack (struct rcu_head * head);
```

### Arguments

*head*

pointer to `rcu_head` structure to be initialized

### Description

This function informs debugobjects of a new `rcu_head` structure that has been allocated as an auto variable on the stack. This function is not required for `rcu_head` structures that are statically defined or that are dynamically allocated on the heap. This function has no effect for `!CONFIG_DEBUG_OBJECTS_RCU_HEAD` kernel builds.

# destroy\_rcu\_head\_on\_stack

## LINUX

## Name

`destroy_rcu_head_on_stack` — destroy on-stack `rcu_head` for debugobjects

## Synopsis

```
void destroy_rcu_head_on_stack (struct rcu_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*head*

pointer to `rcu_head` structure to be initialized

## Description

This function informs debugobjects that an on-stack `rcu_head` structure is about to go out of scope. As with `init_rcu_head_on_stack`, this function is not required for `rcu_head` structures that are statically defined or that are dynamically allocated on the heap. Also as with `init_rcu_head_on_stack`, this function has no effect for `!CONFIG_DEBUG_OBJECTS_RCU_HEAD` kernel builds.

# 1.10. Device Resource Management

## devres\_alloc

**LINUX**

## Name

`devres_alloc` — Allocate device resource data

## Synopsis

```
void * devres_alloc (dr_release_t release, size_t size, gfp_t  
gfp);
```

## Arguments

*release*

Release function devres will be associated with

*size*

Allocation size

*gfp*

Allocation flags

## Description

Allocate devres of *size* bytes. The allocated area is zeroed, then associated with *release*. The returned pointer can be passed to other `devres_*`() functions.

## RETURNS

Pointer to allocated devres on success, NULL on failure.

# devres\_for\_each\_res

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

devres\_for\_each\_res — Resource iterator

### Synopsis

```
void devres_for_each_res (struct device * dev, dr_release_t  
release, dr_match_t match, void * match_data, void (*fn)  
(struct device *, void *, void *), void * data);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

Device to iterate resource from

*release*

Look for resources associated with this release function

*match*

Match function (optional)

*match\_data*

Data for the match function

*fn*

Function to be called for each matched resource.

*data*

Data for *fn*, the 3rd parameter of *fn*



## Description

Call *fn* for each devres of *dev* which is associated with *release* and for which *match* returns 1.

## RETURNS

void

# devres\_free

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

devres\_free — Free device resource data

## Synopsis

```
void devres_free (void * res);
```

## Arguments

*res*

Pointer to devres data to free

## Description

Free devres created with devres\_alloc.

# devres\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`devres_add` — Register device resource

### Synopsis

```
void devres_add (struct device * dev, void * res);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

Device to add resource to

*res*

Resource to register

### Description

Register devres *res* to *dev*. *res* should have been allocated using `devres_alloc`. On driver detach, the associated release function will be invoked and devres will be freed automatically.

# devres\_find

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`devres_find` — Find device resource

### Synopsis

```
void * devres_find (struct device * dev, dr_release_t release,  
dr_match_t match, void * match_data);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

Device to lookup resource from

*release*

Look for resources associated with this release function

*match*

Match function (optional)

*match\_data*

Data for the match function

### Description

Find the latest devres of *dev* which is associated with *release* and for which *match* returns 1. If *match* is NULL, it's considered to match all.

## RETURNS

Pointer to found devres, NULL if not found.

## devres\_get

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`devres_get` — Find devres, if non-existent, add one atomically

### Synopsis

```
void * devres_get (struct device * dev, void * new_res,  
dr_match_t match, void * match_data);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

Device to lookup or add devres for

*new\_res*

Pointer to new initialized devres to add if not found

*match*

Match function (optional)

*match\_data*

Data for the match function

## Description

Find the latest devres of *dev* which has the same release function as *new\_res* and for which *match* return 1. If found, *new\_res* is freed; otherwise, *new\_res* is added atomically.

## RETURNS

Pointer to found or added devres.

# devres\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`devres_remove` — Find a device resource and remove it

## Synopsis

```
void * devres_remove (struct device * dev, dr_release_t
release, dr_match_t match, void * match_data);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to find resource from

*release*

Look for resources associated with this release function

*match*

Match function (optional)

*match\_data*

Data for the match function

## Description

Find the latest devres of *dev* associated with *release* and for which *match* returns 1. If *match* is NULL, it's considered to match all. If found, the resource is removed atomically and returned.

## RETURNS

Pointer to removed devres on success, NULL if not found.

# devres\_destroy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`devres_destroy` — Find a device resource and destroy it

## Synopsis

```
int devres_destroy (struct device * dev, dr_release_t release,  
dr_match_t match, void * match_data);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to find resource from

*release*

Look for resources associated with this release function

*match*

Match function (optional)

*match\_data*

Data for the match function

## Description

Find the latest devres of *dev* associated with *release* and for which *match* returns 1. If *match* is NULL, it's considered to match all. If found, the resource is removed atomically and freed.

## RETURNS

0 if devres is found and freed, -ENOENT if not found.

# devres\_open\_group

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`devres_open_group` — Open a new devres group

## Synopsis

```
void * devres_open_group (struct device * dev, void * id,  
gfp_t gfp);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to open devres group for

*id*

Separator ID

*gfp*

Allocation flags

## Description

Open a new devres group for *dev* with *id*. For *id*, using a pointer to an object which won't be used for another group is recommended. If *id* is NULL, address-wise unique ID is created.

## RETURNS

ID of the new group, NULL on failure.

## devres\_close\_group

**LINUX**



## Name

`devres_close_group` — Close a devres group

## Synopsis

```
void devres_close_group (struct device * dev, void * id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to close devres group for

*id*

ID of target group, can be NULL

## Description

Close the group identified by *id*. If *id* is NULL, the latest open group is selected.

# devres\_remove\_group

## LINUX

## Name

`devres_remove_group` — Remove a devres group

## Synopsis

```
void devres_remove_group (struct device * dev, void * id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to remove group for

*id*

ID of target group, can be NULL

## Description

Remove the group identified by *id*. If *id* is NULL, the latest open group is selected. Note that removing a group doesn't affect any other resources.

# devres\_release\_group

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`devres_release_group` — Release resources in a devres group

## Synopsis

```
int devres_release_group (struct device * dev, void * id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to release group for

*id*

ID of target group, can be NULL

## Description

Release all resources in the group identified by *id*. If *id* is NULL, the latest open group is selected. The selected group and groups properly nested inside the selected group are removed.

## RETURNS

The number of released non-group resources.

# devm\_kzalloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

devm\_kzalloc — Resource-managed kzalloc

## Synopsis

```
void * devm_kzalloc (struct device * dev, size_t size, gfp_t
gfp);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device to allocate memory for

*size*

Allocation size

*gfp*

Allocation gfp flags

## Description

Managed kcalloc. Memory allocated with this function is automatically freed on driver detach. Like all other devres resources, guaranteed alignment is unsigned long long.

## RETURNS

Pointer to allocated memory on success, NULL on failure.

## devm\_kfree

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

devm\_kfree — Resource-managed kfree

## Synopsis

```
void devm_kfree (struct device * dev, void * p);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Device this memory belongs to

*p*

Memory to free

## Description

Free memory allocated with `dev_kzalloc`.



# Chapter 2. Device drivers infrastructure

## 2.1. The Basic Device Driver-Model Structures

### struct bus\_type

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

struct bus\_type — The bus type of the device

#### Synopsis

```
struct bus_type {
    const char * name;
    struct bus_attribute * bus_attrs;
    struct device_attribute * dev_attrs;
    struct driver_attribute * drv_attrs;
    int (* match) (struct device *dev, struct device_driver *drv);
    int (* uevent) (struct device *dev, struct kobj_uevent_env *env);
    int (* probe) (struct device *dev);
    int (* remove) (struct device *dev);
    void (* shutdown) (struct device *dev);
    int (* suspend) (struct device *dev, pm_message_t state);
    int (* resume) (struct device *dev);
    const struct dev_pm_ops * pm;
    struct subsys_private * p;
};
```

## Members

name

The name of the bus.

bus\_attrs

Default attributes of the bus.

dev\_attrs

Default attributes of the devices on the bus.

drv\_attrs

Default attributes of the device drivers on the bus.

match

Called, perhaps multiple times, whenever a new device or driver is added for this bus. It should return a nonzero value if the given device can be handled by the given driver.

uevent

Called when a device is added, removed, or a few other things that generate uevents to add the environment variables.

probe

Called when a new device or driver add to this bus, and callback the specific driver's probe to initial the matched device.

remove

Called when a device removed from this bus.

shutdown

Called at shut-down time to quiesce the device.

suspend

Called when a device on this bus wants to go to sleep mode.

resume

Called to bring a device on this bus out of sleep mode.



pm

Power management operations of this bus, callback the specific device driver's pm-ops.

p

The private data of the driver core, only the driver core can touch this.

## Description

A bus is a channel between the processor and one or more devices. For the purposes of the device model, all devices are connected via a bus, even if it is an internal, virtual, “platform” bus. Buses can plug into each other. A USB controller is usually a PCI device, for example. The device model represents the actual connections between buses and the devices they control. A bus is represented by the `bus_type` structure. It contains the name, the default attributes, the bus' methods, PM operations, and the driver core's private data.

## struct device\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct device_driver` — The basic device driver structure

### Synopsis

```
struct device_driver {
    const char * name;
    struct bus_type * bus;
    struct module * owner;
    const char * mod_name;
    bool suppress_bind_attrs;
    const struct of_device_id * of_match_table;
    int (* probe) (struct device *dev);
    int (* remove) (struct device *dev);
```

```
void (* shutdown) (struct device *dev);
int (* suspend) (struct device *dev, pm_message_t state);
int (* resume) (struct device *dev);
const struct attribute_group ** groups;
const struct dev_pm_ops * pm;
struct driver_private * p;
};
```

## Members

name

Name of the device driver.

bus

The bus which the device of this driver belongs to.

owner

The module owner.

mod\_name

Used for built-in modules.

suppress\_bind\_attrs

Disables bind/unbind via sysfs.

of\_match\_table

The open firmware table.

probe

Called to query the existence of a specific device, whether this driver can work with it, and bind the driver to a specific device.

remove

Called when the device is removed from the system to unbind a device from this driver.

shutdown

Called at shut-down time to quiesce the device.

suspend

Called to put the device to sleep mode. Usually to a low power state.

resume

Called to bring a device from sleep mode.

groups

Default attributes that get created by the driver core automatically.

pm

Power management operations of the device which matched this driver.

p

Driver core's private data, no one other than the driver core can touch this.

## Description

The device driver-model tracks all of the drivers known to the system. The main reason for this tracking is to enable the driver core to match up drivers with new devices. Once drivers are known objects within the system, however, a number of other things become possible. Device drivers can export information and configuration variables that are independent of any specific device.

## struct class

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct class` — device classes

### Synopsis

```
struct class {
```

```
const char * name;
struct module * owner;
struct class_attribute * class_attrs;
struct device_attribute * dev_attrs;
struct bin_attribute * dev_bin_attrs;
struct kobject * dev_kobj;
int (* dev_uevent) (struct device *dev, struct kobj_uevent_env *env);
char *(* devnode) (struct device *dev, mode_t *mode);
void (* class_release) (struct class *class);
void (* dev_release) (struct device *dev);
int (* suspend) (struct device *dev, pm_message_t state);
int (* resume) (struct device *dev);
const struct kobj_ns_type_operations * ns_type;
const void *(* namespace) (struct device *dev);
const struct dev_pm_ops * pm;
struct subsys_private * p;
};
```

## Members

**name**

Name of the class.

**owner**

The module owner.

**class\_attrs**

Default attributes of this class.

**dev\_attrs**

Default attributes of the devices belong to the class.

**dev\_bin\_attrs**

Default binary attributes of the devices belong to the class.

**dev\_kobj**

The kobject that represents this class and links it into the hierarchy.

**dev\_uevent**

Called when a device is added, removed from this class, or a few other things that generate uevents to add the environment variables.

devnode

Callback to provide the devtmpfs.

class\_release

Called to release this class.

dev\_release

Called to release the device.

suspend

Used to put the device to sleep mode, usually to a low power state.

resume

Used to bring the device from the sleep mode.

ns\_type

Callbacks so sysfs can determine namespaces.

namespace

Namespace of the device belongs to this class.

pm

The default device power management operations of this class.

p

The private data of the driver core, no one other than the driver core can touch this.

## **Description**

A class is a higher-level view of a device that abstracts out low-level implementation details. Drivers may see a SCSI disk or an ATA disk, but, at the class level, they are all simply disks. Classes allow user space to work with devices based on what they do, rather than how they are connected or how they work.

# struct device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

struct device — The basic device structure

### Synopsis

```
struct device {
    struct device * parent;
    struct device_private * p;
    struct kobject kobj;
    const char * init_name;
    const struct device_type * type;
    struct mutex mutex;
    struct bus_type * bus;
    struct device_driver * driver;
    void * platform_data;
    struct dev_pm_info power;
    struct dev_power_domain * pwr_domain;
#ifdef CONFIG_NUMA
    int numa_node;
#endif
    u64 * dma_mask;
    u64 coherent_dma_mask;
    struct device_dma_parameters * dma_parms;
    struct list_head dma_pools;
    struct dma_coherent_mem * dma_mem;
    struct dev_archdata archdata;
    struct device_node * of_node;
    dev_t devt;
    spinlock_t devres_lock;
    struct list_head devres_head;
    struct klist_node knode_class;
    struct class * class;
    const struct attribute_group ** groups;
    void (* release) (struct device *dev);
};
```

## Members

parent

The device's "parent" device, the device to which it is attached. In most cases, a parent device is some sort of bus or host controller. If parent is NULL, the device, is a top-level device, which is not usually what you want.

p

Holds the private data of the driver core portions of the device. See the comment of the struct device\_private for detail.

kobj

A top-level, abstract class from which other classes are derived.

init\_name

Initial name of the device.

type

The type of device. This identifies the device type and carries type-specific information.

mutex

Mutex to synchronize calls to its driver.

bus

Type of bus device is on.

driver

Which driver has allocated this

platform\_data

Platform data specific to the device.

power

For device power management. See Documentation/power/devices.txt for details.

pwr\_domain

Provide callbacks that are executed during system suspend, hibernation, system resume and during runtime PM transitions along with subsystem-level and driver-level callbacks.

## *Chapter 2. Device drivers infrastructure*

`numa_node`

NUMA node this device is close to.

`dma_mask`

Dma mask (if dma'ble device).

`coherent_dma_mask`

Like `dma_mask`, but for `alloc_coherent` mapping as not all hardware supports 64-bit addresses for consistent allocations such descriptors.

`dma_parms`

A low level driver may set these to teach IOMMU code about segment limitations.

`dma_pools`

Dma pools (if dma'ble device).

`dma_mem`

Internal for coherent mem override.

`archdata`

For arch-specific additions.

`of_node`

Associated device tree node.

`devt`

For creating the sysfs “dev”.

`devres_lock`

Spinlock to protect the resource of the device.

`devres_head`

The resources list of the device.

`knode_class`

The node used to add the device to the class list.

`class`

The class of the device.



groups

Optional attribute groups.

release

Callback to free the device after all references have gone away. This should be set by the allocator of the device (i.e. the bus driver that discovered the device).

## Example

For devices on custom boards, as typical of embedded and SOC based hardware, Linux often uses `platform_data` to point to board-specific structures describing devices and how they are wired. That can include what ports are available, chip variants, which GPIO pins act in what additional roles, and so on. This shrinks the “Board Support Packages” (BSPs) and minimizes board-specific `#ifdefs` in drivers.

## Description

At the lowest level, every device in a Linux system is represented by an instance of `struct device`. The device structure contains the information that the device model core needs to model the system. Most subsystems, however, track additional information about the devices they host. As a result, it is rare for devices to be represented by bare device structures; instead, that structure, like `kobject` structures, is usually embedded within a higher-level representation of the device.

## module\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`module_driver` — Helper macro for drivers that don’t do anything special in module init/exit. This eliminates a lot of boilerplate. Each module may only use this

macro once, and calling it replaces `module_init` and `module_exit`.

## Synopsis

```
module_driver ( __driver, __register, __unregister, ... );
```

## Arguments

*\_\_driver*

driver name

*\_\_register*

register function for this driver type

*\_\_unregister*

unregister function for this driver type @...: Additional arguments to be passed to `__register` and `__unregister`.

...

variable arguments

## Description

Use this macro to construct bus specific macros for registering drivers, and do not use it on its own.

## 2.2. Device Drivers Base

### driver\_for\_each\_device

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`driver_for_each_device` — Iterator for devices bound to a driver.

#### Synopsis

```
int driver_for_each_device (struct device_driver * drv, struct
device * start, void * data, int (*fn) (struct device *, void
*));
```

#### Arguments

*drv*

Driver we're iterating.

*start*

Device to begin with

*data*

Data to pass to the callback.

*fn*

Function to call for each device.

## Description

Iterate over the *drv*'s list of devices calling *fn* for each one.

# driver\_find\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`driver_find_device` — device iterator for locating a particular device.

## Synopsis

```
struct device * driver_find_device (struct device_driver *  
drv, struct device * start, void * data, int (*match) (struct  
device *dev, void *data));
```

## Arguments

*drv*

The device's driver

*start*

Device to begin with

*data*

Data to pass to match function

*match*

Callback function to check device

## Description

This is similar to the `driver_for_each_device` function above, but it returns a reference to a device that is 'found' for later use, as determined by the `match` callback.

The callback should return 0 if the device doesn't match and non-zero if it does. If the callback returns non-zero, this function will return to the caller and not iterate over any more devices.

## driver\_create\_file

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`driver_create_file` — create sysfs file for driver.

## Synopsis

```
int driver_create_file (struct device_driver * drv, const
struct driver_attribute * attr);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

driver.

*attr*

driver attribute descriptor.

# driver\_remove\_file

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`driver_remove_file` — remove sysfs file for driver.

### Synopsis

```
void driver_remove_file (struct device_driver * drv, const  
struct driver_attribute * attr);
```

### Arguments

*drv*

driver.

*attr*

driver attribute descriptor.

# driver\_add\_kobj

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`driver_add_kobj` — add a kobject below the specified driver

## Synopsis

```
int driver_add_kobj (struct device_driver * drv, struct
kobject * kobj, const char * fmt, ...);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

requesting device driver

*kobj*

kobject to add below this driver

*fmt*

format string that names the kobject

...

variable arguments

## Description

You really don't want to do this, this is only here due to one looney iseries driver, go poke those developers if you are annoyed about this...

## get\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`get_driver` — increment driver reference count.

## Synopsis

```
struct device_driver * get_driver (struct device_driver *  
drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*  
driver.

## put\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`put_driver` — decrement driver's refcount.

## Synopsis

```
void put_driver (struct device_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*  
driver.



# driver\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`driver_register` — register driver with bus

### Synopsis

```
int driver_register (struct device_driver * drv);
```

### Arguments

*drv*

driver to register

### Description

We pass off most of the work to the `bus_add_driver` call, since most of the things we have to do deal with the bus structures.

# driver\_unregister

## LINUX

## Name

`driver_unregister` — remove driver from system.

## Synopsis

```
void driver_unregister (struct device_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

driver.

## Description

Again, we pass off most of the work to the bus-level call.

# driver\_find

## LINUX

## Name

`driver_find` — locate driver on a bus by its name.

## Synopsis

```
struct device_driver * driver_find (const char * name, struct  
bus_type * bus);
```

## Arguments

*name*

name of the driver.

*bus*

bus to scan for the driver.

## Description

Call `kset_find_obj` to iterate over list of drivers on a bus to find driver by name.  
Return driver if found.

Note that `kset_find_obj` increments driver's reference count.

## dev\_driver\_string

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`dev_driver_string` — Return a device's driver name, if at all possible

## Synopsis

```
const char * dev_driver_string (const struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

struct device to get the name of

## Description

Will return the device's driver's name if it is bound to a device. If the device is not bound to a device, it will return the name of the bus it is attached to. If it is not attached to a bus either, an empty string will be returned.

# device\_create\_file

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_create_file` — create sysfs attribute file for device.

## Synopsis

```
int device_create_file (struct device * dev, const struct  
device_attribute * attr);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

*attr*

device attribute descriptor.

## device\_remove\_file

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_remove_file` — remove sysfs attribute file.

## Synopsis

```
void device_remove_file (struct device * dev, const struct  
device_attribute * attr);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

*attr*

device attribute descriptor.

# device\_create\_bin\_file

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_create_bin_file` — create sysfs binary attribute file for device.

### Synopsis

```
int device_create_bin_file (struct device * dev, const struct  
bin_attribute * attr);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

device.

*attr*

device binary attribute descriptor.

# device\_remove\_bin\_file

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_remove_bin_file` — remove sysfs binary attribute file

## Synopsis

```
void device_remove_bin_file (struct device * dev, const struct  
bin_attribute * attr);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

*attr*

device binary attribute descriptor.

## device\_schedule\_callback\_owner

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_schedule_callback_owner` — helper to schedule a callback for a device

## Synopsis

```
int device_schedule_callback_owner (struct device * dev, void  
(*func) (struct device *), struct module * owner);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

*func*

callback function to invoke later.

*owner*

module owning the callback routine

## Description

Attribute methods must not unregister themselves or their parent device (which would amount to the same thing). Attempts to do so will deadlock, since unregistration is mutually exclusive with driver callbacks.

Instead methods can call this routine, which will attempt to allocate and schedule a workqueue request to call back *func* with *dev* as its argument in the workqueue's process context. *dev* will be pinned until *func* returns.

This routine is usually called via the inline `device_schedule_callback`, which automatically sets *owner* to `THIS_MODULE`.

Returns 0 if the request was submitted, `-ENOMEM` if storage could not be allocated, `-ENODEV` if a reference to *owner* isn't available.

## NOTE

This routine won't work if `CONFIG_SYSFS` isn't set! It uses an underlying `sysfs` routine (since it is intended for use by attribute methods), and if `sysfs` isn't available you'll get nothing but `-ENOSYS`.

## device\_initialize

**LINUX**



## Name

`device_initialize` — init device structure.

## Synopsis

```
void device_initialize (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

## Description

This prepares the device for use by other layers by initializing its fields. It is the first half of `device_register`, if called by that function, though it can also be called separately, so one may use *dev*'s fields. In particular, `get_device/put_device` may be used for reference counting of *dev* after calling this function.

## NOTE

Use `put_device` to give up your reference instead of freeing *dev* directly once you have called this function.

## `dev_set_name`

**LINUX**

## Name

`dev_set_name` — set a device name

## Synopsis

```
int dev_set_name (struct device * dev, const char * fmt,
    ...);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device

*fmt*

format string for the device's name

...

variable arguments

## device\_add

### LINUX

## Name

`device_add` — add device to device hierarchy.

## Synopsis

```
int device_add (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

## Description

This is part 2 of `device_register`, though may be called separately `_iff_device_initialize` has been called separately.

This adds *dev* to the kobject hierarchy via `kobject_add`, adds it to the global and sibling lists for the device, then adds it to the other relevant subsystems of the driver model.

## NOTE

`_Never_` directly free *dev* after calling this function, even if it returned an error! Always use `put_device` to give up your reference instead.

## device\_register

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_register` — register a device with the system.

## Synopsis

```
int device_register (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the device structure

## Description

This happens in two clean steps - initialize the device and add it to the system. The two steps can be called separately, but this is the easiest and most common. I.e. you should only call the two helpers separately if have a clearly defined need to use and refcount the device before it is added to the hierarchy.

## NOTE

Never directly free *dev* after calling this function, even if it returned an error!  
Always use `put_device` to give up the reference initialized in this function instead.

## get\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`get_device` — increment reference count for device.

## Synopsis

```
struct device * get_device (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

## Description

This simply forwards the call to `kobject_get`, though we do take care to provide for the case that we get a NULL pointer passed in.

## put\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`put_device` — decrement reference count.

## Synopsis

```
void put_device (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device in question.

## device\_del

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_del` — delete device from system.

## Synopsis

```
void device_del (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device.

## Description

This is the first part of the device unregistration sequence. This removes the device from the lists we control from here, has it removed from the other driver model subsystems it was added to in `device_add`, and removes it from the kobject hierarchy.

## NOTE

this should be called manually `_iff_ device_add` was also called manually.

# device\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`device_unregister` — unregister device from system.

## Synopsis

```
void device_unregister (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device going away.

## Description

We do this in two parts, like we do `device_register`. First, we remove it from all the subsystems with `device_del`, then we decrement the reference count via `put_device`. If that is the final reference count, the device will be cleaned up via `device_release` above. Otherwise, the structure will stick around until the final reference to the device is dropped.

# device\_for\_each\_child

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_for_each_child` — device child iterator.

### Synopsis

```
int device_for_each_child (struct device * parent, void *  
data, int (*fn) (struct device *dev, void *data));
```

### Arguments

*parent*

parent struct device.

*data*

data for the callback.

*fn*

function to be called for each device.

### Description

Iterate over *parent*'s child devices, and call *fn* for each, passing it *data*.

We check the return of *fn* each time. If it returns anything other than 0, we break out and return that value.



# device\_find\_child

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_find_child` — device iterator for locating a particular device.

### Synopsis

```
struct device * device_find_child (struct device * parent,
void * data, int (*match) (struct device *dev, void *data));
```

### Arguments

*parent*

parent struct device

*data*

Data to pass to match function

*match*

Callback function to check device

### Description

This is similar to the `device_for_each_child` function above, but it returns a reference to a device that is 'found' for later use, as determined by the *match* callback.

The callback should return 0 if the device doesn't match and non-zero if it does. If the callback returns non-zero and a reference to the current device can be obtained, this function will return to the caller and not iterate over any more devices.

# \_\_root\_device\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__root_device_register` — allocate and register a root device

### Synopsis

```
struct device * __root_device_register (const char * name,  
struct module * owner);
```

### Arguments

*name*

root device name

*owner*

owner module of the root device, usually `THIS_MODULE`

### Description

This function allocates a root device and registers it using `device_register`. In order to free the returned device, use `root_device_unregister`.

Root devices are dummy devices which allow other devices to be grouped under `/sys/devices`. Use this function to allocate a root device and then use it as the parent of any device which should appear under `/sys/devices/{name}`

The `/sys/devices/{name}` directory will also contain a 'module' symlink which points to the *owner* directory in sysfs.

Returns struct device pointer on success, or `ERR_PTR` on error.

## Note

You probably want to use `root_device_register`.

# root\_device\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`root_device_unregister` — unregister and free a root device

## Synopsis

```
void root_device_unregister (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device going away

## Description

This function unregisters and cleans up a device that was created by `root_device_register`.

# device\_create\_vargs

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_create_vargs` — creates a device and registers it with sysfs

### Synopsis

```
struct device * device_create_vargs (struct class * class,  
struct device * parent, dev_t devt, void * drvdata, const char  
* fmt, va_list args);
```

### Arguments

*class*

pointer to the struct class that this device should be registered to

*parent*

pointer to the parent struct device of this new device, if any

*devt*

the `dev_t` for the char device to be added

*drvdata*

the data to be added to the device for callbacks

*fmt*

string for the device's name

*args*

`va_list` for the device's name

## Description

This function can be used by char device classes. A struct device will be created in sysfs, registered to the specified class.

A “dev” file will be created, showing the dev\_t for the device, if the dev\_t is not 0,0. If a pointer to a parent struct device is passed in, the newly created struct device will be a child of that device in sysfs. The pointer to the struct device will be returned from the call. Any further sysfs files that might be required can be created using this pointer.

Returns struct device pointer on success, or ERR\_PTR on error.

## Note

the struct class passed to this function must have previously been created with a call to class\_create.

# device\_create

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

device\_create — creates a device and registers it with sysfs

## Synopsis

```
struct device * device_create (struct class * class, struct
device * parent, dev_t devt, void * drvdata, const char * fmt,
...);
```

## Arguments

*class*

pointer to the struct class that this device should be registered to

*parent*

pointer to the parent struct device of this new device, if any

*devt*

the dev\_t for the char device to be added

*drvdata*

the data to be added to the device for callbacks

*fmt*

string for the device's name

...

variable arguments

## Description

This function can be used by char device classes. A struct device will be created in sysfs, registered to the specified class.

A “dev” file will be created, showing the dev\_t for the device, if the dev\_t is not 0,0. If a pointer to a parent struct device is passed in, the newly created struct device will be a child of that device in sysfs. The pointer to the struct device will be returned from the call. Any further sysfs files that might be required can be created using this pointer.

Returns struct device pointer on success, or ERR\_PTR on error.

## Note

the struct class passed to this function must have previously been created with a call to `class_create`.

# device\_destroy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_destroy` — removes a device that was created with `device_create`

### Synopsis

```
void device_destroy (struct class * class, dev_t devt);
```

### Arguments

*class*

pointer to the struct class that this device was registered with

*devt*

the `dev_t` of the device that was previously registered

### Description

This call unregisters and cleans up a device that was created with a call to `device_create`.

# device\_rename

## LINUX

## Name

`device_rename` — renames a device

## Synopsis

```
int device_rename (struct device * dev, const char *  
new_name);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

the pointer to the struct device to be renamed

*new\_name*

the new name of the device

## Description

It is the responsibility of the caller to provide mutual exclusion between two different calls of `device_rename` on the same device to ensure that `new_name` is valid and won't conflict with other devices.

## Note

Don't call this function. Currently, the networking layer calls this function, but that will change. The following text from Kay Sievers offers

## some insight

Renaming devices is racy at many levels, symlinks and other stuff are not replaced atomically, and you get a “move” uevent, but it's not easy to connect the event to the



old and new device. Device nodes are not renamed at all, there isn't even support for that in the kernel now.

In the meantime, during renaming, your target name might be taken by another driver, creating conflicts. Or the old name is taken directly after you renamed it -- then you get events for the same DEVPATH, before you even see the "move" event. It's just a mess, and nothing new should ever rely on kernel device renaming. Besides that, it's not even implemented now for other things than (driver-core wise very simple) network devices.

We are currently about to change network renaming in udev to completely disallow renaming of devices in the same namespace as the kernel uses, because we can't solve the problems properly, that arise with swapping names of multiple interfaces without races. Means, renaming of eth[0-9]\* will only be allowed to some other name than eth[0-9]\*, for the aforementioned reasons.

Make up a "real" name in the driver before you register anything, or add some other attributes for userspace to find the device, or use udev to add symlinks -- but never rename kernel devices later, it's a complete mess. We don't even want to get into that and try to implement the missing pieces in the core. We really have other pieces to fix in the driver core mess. :)

## device\_move

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`device_move` — moves a device to a new parent

### Synopsis

```
int device_move (struct device * dev, struct device *  
new_parent, enum dpm_order dpm_order);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

the pointer to the struct device to be moved

*new\_parent*

the new parent of the device (can be NULL)

*dpm\_order*

how to reorder the dpm\_list

## \_\_class\_create

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__class_create` — create a struct class structure

### Synopsis

```
struct class * __class_create (struct module * owner, const
char * name, struct lock_class_key * key);
```

### Arguments

*owner*

pointer to the module that is to “own” this struct class

*name*

pointer to a string for the name of this class.

*key*

the lock\_class\_key for this class; used by mutex lock debugging

## Description

This is used to create a struct class pointer that can then be used in calls to `device_create`.

Returns struct class pointer on success, or `ERR_PTR` on error.

Note, the pointer created here is to be destroyed when finished by making a call to `class_destroy`.

## class\_destroy

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`class_destroy` — destroys a struct class structure

### Synopsis

```
void class_destroy (struct class * cls);
```

## Arguments

*cls*

pointer to the struct class that is to be destroyed

## Description

Note, the pointer to be destroyed must have been created with a call to `class_create`.

# class\_dev\_iter\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_dev_iter_init` — initialize class device iterator

## Synopsis

```
void class_dev_iter_init (struct class_dev_iter * iter, struct  
class * class, struct device * start, const struct device_type  
* type);
```

## Arguments

*iter*

class iterator to initialize

*class*

the class we wanna iterate over

*start*

the device to start iterating from, if any

*type*

device\_type of the devices to iterate over, NULL for all

## Description

Initialize class iterator *iter* such that it iterates over devices of *class*. If *start* is set, the list iteration will start there, otherwise if it is NULL, the iteration starts at the beginning of the list.

## class\_dev\_iter\_next

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_dev_iter_next` — iterate to the next device

## Synopsis

```
struct device * class_dev_iter_next (struct class_dev_iter *
iter);
```

## Arguments

*iter*

class iterator to proceed

## Description

Proceed *iter* to the next device and return it. Returns NULL if iteration is complete.

The returned device is referenced and won't be released till iterator is proceed to the next device or exited. The caller is free to do whatever it wants to do with the device including calling back into class code.

## class\_dev\_iter\_exit

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_dev_iter_exit` — finish iteration

## Synopsis

```
void class_dev_iter_exit (struct class_dev_iter * iter);
```

## Arguments

*iter*

class iterator to finish

## Description

Finish an iteration. Always call this function after iteration is complete whether the iteration ran till the end or not.

# class\_for\_each\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_for_each_device` — device iterator

## Synopsis

```
int class_for_each_device (struct class * class, struct device
* start, void * data, int (*fn) (struct device *, void *));
```

## Arguments

*class*

the class we're iterating

*start*

the device to start with in the list, if any.

*data*

data for the callback

*fn*

function to be called for each device

## Description

Iterate over *class*'s list of devices, and call *fn* for each, passing it *data*. If *start* is set, the list iteration will start there, otherwise if it is NULL, the iteration starts at the beginning of the list.

We check the return of *fn* each time. If it returns anything other than 0, we break out and return that value.

*fn* is allowed to do anything including calling back into class code. There's no locking restriction.

## class\_find\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_find_device` — device iterator for locating a particular device

## Synopsis

```
struct device * class_find_device (struct class * class,
struct device * start, void * data, int (*match) (struct
device *, void *));
```

## Arguments

*class*

the class we're iterating

*start*

Device to begin with



*data*

data for the match function

*match*

function to check device

## Description

This is similar to the `class_for_each_dev` function above, but it returns a reference to a device that is 'found' for later use, as determined by the *match* callback.

The callback should return 0 if the device doesn't match and non-zero if it does. If the callback returns non-zero, this function will return to the caller and not iterate over any more devices.

Note, you will need to drop the reference with `put_device` after use.

*fn* is allowed to do anything including calling back into class code. There's no locking restriction.

## class\_compat\_register

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_compat_register` — register a compatibility class

## Synopsis

```
struct class_compat * class_compat_register (const char *
name);
```

## Arguments

*name*

the name of the class

## Description

Compatibility class are meant as a temporary user-space compatibility workaround when converting a family of class devices to a bus devices.

# class\_compat\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`class_compat_unregister` — unregister a compatibility class

## Synopsis

```
void class_compat_unregister (struct class_compat * cls);
```

## Arguments

*cls*

the class to unregister

# class\_compat\_create\_link

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`class_compat_create_link` — create a compatibility class device link to a bus device

### Synopsis

```
int class_compat_create_link (struct class_compat * cls,  
struct device * dev, struct device * device_link);
```

### Arguments

*cls*

the compatibility class

*dev*

the target bus device

*device\_link*

an optional device to which a “device” link should be created

# class\_compat\_remove\_link

## LINUX

## Name

`class_compat_remove_link` — remove a compatibility class device link to a bus device

## Synopsis

```
void class_compat_remove_link (struct class_compat * cls,  
struct device * dev, struct device * device_link);
```

## Arguments

*cls*

the compatibility class

*dev*

the target bus device

*device\_link*

an optional device to which a “device” link was previously created

# request\_firmware

## LINUX

## Name

`request_firmware` — send firmware request and wait for it

## Synopsis

```
int request_firmware (const struct firmware ** firmware_p,  
const char * name, struct device * device);
```

## Arguments

*firmware\_p*

pointer to firmware image

*name*

name of firmware file

*device*

device for which firmware is being loaded

## Description

*firmware\_p* will be used to return a firmware image by the name of *name* for device *device*.

Should be called from user context where sleeping is allowed.

*name* will be used as \$FIRMWARE in the uevent environment and should be distinctive enough not to be confused with any other firmware image for this or any other device.

Caller must hold the reference count of *device*.

## release\_firmware

**LINUX**

## Name

`release_firmware` — release the resource associated with a firmware image

## Synopsis

```
void release_firmware (const struct firmware * fw);
```

## Arguments

*fw*

firmware resource to release

# request\_firmware\_nowait

## LINUX

## Name

`request_firmware_nowait` — asynchronous version of `request_firmware`

## Synopsis

```
int request_firmware_nowait (struct module * module, bool  
uevent, const char * name, struct device * device, gfp_t gfp,  
void * context, void (*cont) (const struct firmware *fw, void  
*context));
```

## Arguments

*module*

module requesting the firmware

*uevent*

sends uevent to copy the firmware image if this flag is non-zero else the firmware copy must be done manually.

*name*

name of firmware file

*device*

device for which firmware is being loaded

*gfp*

allocation flags

*context*

will be passed over to *cont*, and *fw* may be NULL if firmware request fails.

*cont*

function will be called asynchronously when the firmware request is over.

## Description

Caller must hold the reference count of *device*.

Asynchronous variant of `request_firmware` for user contexts: - sleep for as small periods as possible since it may increase kernel boot time of built-in device drivers requesting firmware in their `->probe` methods, if *gfp* is GFP\_KERNEL.

- can't sleep at all if *gfp* is GFP\_ATOMIC.

# cache\_firmware

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`cache_firmware` — cache one firmware image in kernel memory space

### Synopsis

```
int cache_firmware (const char * fw_name);
```

### Arguments

*fw\_name*

the firmware image name

### Description

Cache firmware in kernel memory so that drivers can use it when system isn't ready for them to request firmware image from userspace. Once it returns successfully, driver can use `request_firmware` or its `nowait` version to get the cached firmware without any interacting with userspace

Return 0 if the firmware image has been cached successfully Return !0 otherwise

# uncache\_firmware

## LINUX



## Name

`uncache_firmware` — remove one cached firmware image

## Synopsis

```
int uncache_firmware (const char * fw_name);
```

## Arguments

*fw\_name*

the firmware image name

## Description

Uncache one firmware image which has been cached successfully before.

Return 0 if the firmware cache has been removed successfully Return !0 otherwise

# transport\_class\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`transport_class_register` — register an initial transport class

## Synopsis

```
int transport_class_register (struct transport_class *  
tclass);
```

## Arguments

*tclass*

a pointer to the transport class structure to be initialised

## Description

The transport class contains an embedded class which is used to identify it. The caller should initialise this structure with zeros and then generic class must have been initialised with the actual transport class unique name. There's a macro `DECLARE_TRANSPORT_CLASS` to do this (declared classes still must be registered).

Returns 0 on success or error on failure.

# transport\_class\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`transport_class_unregister` — unregister a previously registered class

## Synopsis

```
void transport_class_unregister (struct transport_class *  
tclass);
```

## Arguments

*tclass*

The transport class to unregister

## Description

Must be called prior to deallocating the memory for the transport class.

# anon\_transport\_class\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`anon_transport_class_register` — register an anonymous class

## Synopsis

```
int anon_transport_class_register (struct anon_transport_class  
* atc);
```

## Arguments

*atc*

The anon transport class to register

## Description

The anonymous transport class contains both a transport class and a container. The idea of an anonymous class is that it never actually has any device attributes associated with it (and thus saves on container storage). So it can only be used for triggering events. Use `prezero` and then use `DECLARE_ANON_TRANSPORT_CLASS` to initialise the anon transport class storage.

# anon\_transport\_class\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`anon_transport_class_unregister` — unregister an anon class

## Synopsis

```
void anon_transport_class_unregister (struct  
anon_transport_class * atc);
```

## Arguments

*atc*

Pointer to the anon transport class to unregister

## Description

Must be called prior to deallocating the memory for the anon transport class.

# transport\_setup\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`transport_setup_device` — declare a new dev for transport class association but don't make it visible yet.

### Synopsis

```
void transport_setup_device (struct device * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

the generic device representing the entity being added

### Description

Usually, *dev* represents some component in the HBA system (either the HBA itself or a device remote across the HBA bus). This routine is simply a trigger point to see if any set of transport classes wishes to associate with the added device. This allocates storage for the class device and initialises it, but does not yet add it to the system or add attributes to it (you do this with `transport_add_device`). If you have no need for a separate setup and add operations, use `transport_register_device` (see `transport_class.h`).

# transport\_add\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`transport_add_device` — declare a new dev for transport class association

### Synopsis

```
void transport_add_device (struct device * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

the generic device representing the entity being added

### Description

Usually, *dev* represents some component in the HBA system (either the HBA itself or a device remote across the HBA bus). This routine is simply a trigger point used to add the device to the system and register attributes for it.

# transport\_configure\_device

## LINUX

## Name

`transport_configure_device` — configure an already set up device

## Synopsis

```
void transport_configure_device (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

generic device representing device to be configured

## Description

The idea of configure is simply to provide a point within the setup process to allow the transport class to extract information from a device after it has been setup. This is used in SCSI because we have to have a setup device to begin using the HBA, but after we send the initial inquiry, we use configure to extract the device parameters. The device need not have been added to be configured.

# transport\_remove\_device

## LINUX

## Name

`transport_remove_device` — remove the visibility of a device

## Synopsis

```
void transport_remove_device (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

generic device to remove

## Description

This call removes the visibility of the device (to the user from sysfs), but does not destroy it. To eliminate a device entirely you must also call `transport_destroy_device`. If you don't need to do remove and destroy as separate operations, use `transport_unregister_device` (see `transport_class.h`) which will perform both calls for you.

# transport\_destroy\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`transport_destroy_device` — destroy a removed device

## Synopsis

```
void transport_destroy_device (struct device * dev);
```



## Arguments

*dev*

device to eliminate from the transport class.

## Description

This call triggers the elimination of storage associated with the transport classdev.

Note: all it really does is relinquish a reference to the classdev. The memory will not be freed until the last reference goes to zero. Note also that the classdev retains a reference count on dev, so dev too will remain for as long as the transport class device remains around.

# sysdev\_driver\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sysdev_driver_register` — Register auxiliary driver

## Synopsis

```
int sysdev_driver_register (struct sysdev_class * cls, struct
sysdev_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*cls*

Device class driver belongs to.

*drv*

Driver.

## Description

*drv* is inserted into *cls->drivers* to be called on each operation on devices of that class. The refcount of *cls* is incremented.

# sysdev\_driver\_unregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sysdev_driver_unregister` — Remove an auxiliary driver.

## Synopsis

```
void sysdev_driver_unregister (struct sysdev_class * cls,  
struct sysdev_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*cls*

Class driver belongs to.

*drv*

Driver.

# sysdev\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`sysdev_register` — add a system device to the tree

### Synopsis

```
int sysdev_register (struct sys_device * sysdev);
```

### Arguments

*sysdev*

device in question

# platform\_device\_register\_simple

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_register_simple` — add a platform-level device and its resources

## Synopsis

```
struct platform_device * platform_device_register_simple
(const char * name, int id, const struct resource * res,
unsigned int num);
```

## Arguments

*name*

base name of the device we're adding

*id*

instance id

*res*

set of resources that needs to be allocated for the device

*num*

number of resources

## Description

This function creates a simple platform device that requires minimal resource and memory management. Canned release function freeing memory allocated for the device allows drivers using such devices to be unloaded without waiting for the last reference to the device to be dropped.

This interface is primarily intended for use with legacy drivers which probe hardware directly. Because such drivers create sysfs device nodes themselves, rather than letting system infrastructure handle such device enumeration tasks, they don't fully conform to the Linux driver model. In particular, when such drivers are built as modules, they can't be "hotplugged".

Returns struct platform\_device pointer on success, or ERR\_PTR on error.

# platform\_device\_register\_data

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_register_data` — add a platform-level device with platform-specific data

### Synopsis

```
struct platform_device * platform_device_register_data (struct  
device * parent, const char * name, int id, const void * data,  
size_t size);
```

### Arguments

*parent*

parent device for the device we're adding

*name*

base name of the device we're adding

*id*

instance id

*data*

platform specific data for this platform device

*size*

size of platform specific data

## Description

This function creates a simple platform device that requires minimal resource and memory management. Canned release function freeing memory allocated for the device allows drivers using such devices to be unloaded without waiting for the last reference to the device to be dropped.

Returns struct platform\_device pointer on success, or ERR\_PTR on error.

# platform\_get\_resource

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

platform\_get\_resource — get a resource for a device

## Synopsis

```
struct resource * platform_get_resource (struct  
platform_device * dev, unsigned int type, unsigned int num);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

platform device

*type*

resource type

*num*

resource index

# platform\_get\_irq

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_get_irq` — get an IRQ for a device

## Synopsis

```
int platform_get_irq (struct platform_device * dev, unsigned  
int num);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

platform device

*num*

IRQ number index

# platform\_get\_resource\_byname

**LINUX**

## Name

`platform_get_resource_byname` — get a resource for a device by name

## Synopsis

```
struct resource * platform_get_resource_byname (struct
platform_device * dev, unsigned int type, const char * name);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

platform device

*type*

resource type

*name*

resource name

# platform\_get\_irq\_byname

## LINUX

## Name

`platform_get_irq_byname` — get an IRQ for a device



## Synopsis

```
int platform_get_irq_byname (struct platform_device * dev,  
const char * name);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

platform device

*name*

IRQ name

## platform\_add\_devices

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_add_devices` — add a numbers of platform devices

## Synopsis

```
int platform_add_devices (struct platform_device ** devs, int  
num);
```

## Arguments

*devs*

array of platform devices to add

*num*

number of platform devices in array

## platform\_device\_put

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_device_put` — destroy a platform device

## Synopsis

```
void platform_device_put (struct platform_device * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

platform device to free

## Description

Free all memory associated with a platform device. This function must `_only_` be externally called in error cases. All other usage is a bug.

# platform\_device\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_alloc` — create a platform device

### Synopsis

```
struct platform_device * platform_device_alloc (const char *  
name, int id);
```

### Arguments

*name*

base name of the device we're adding

*id*

instance id

### Description

Create a platform device object which can have other objects attached to it, and which will have attached objects freed when it is released.

# platform\_device\_add\_resources

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_add_resources` — add resources to a platform device

### Synopsis

```
int platform_device_add_resources (struct platform_device *  
pdev, const struct resource * res, unsigned int num);
```

### Arguments

*pdev*

platform device allocated by `platform_device_alloc` to add resources to

*res*

set of resources that needs to be allocated for the device

*num*

number of resources

### Description

Add a copy of the resources to the platform device. The memory associated with the resources will be freed when the platform device is released.

# platform\_device\_add\_data

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_add_data` — add platform-specific data to a platform device

### Synopsis

```
int platform_device_add_data (struct platform_device * pdev,  
const void * data, size_t size);
```

### Arguments

*pdev*

platform device allocated by `platform_device_alloc` to add resources to

*data*

platform specific data for this platform device

*size*

size of platform specific data

### Description

Add a copy of platform specific data to the platform device's `platform_data` pointer. The memory associated with the platform data will be freed when the platform device is released.

# platform\_device\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`platform_device_add` — add a platform device to device hierarchy

### Synopsis

```
int platform_device_add (struct platform_device * pdev);
```

### Arguments

*pdev*

platform device we're adding

### Description

This is part 2 of `platform_device_register`, though may be called separately iff `pdev` was allocated by `platform_device_alloc`.

# platform\_device\_del

## LINUX

## Name

`platform_device_del` — remove a platform-level device

## Synopsis

```
void platform_device_del (struct platform_device * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

platform device we're removing

## Description

Note that this function will also release all memory- and port-based resources owned by the device (*dev->resource*). This function must *\_only\_* be externally called in error cases. All other usage is a bug.

# platform\_device\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`platform_device_register` — add a platform-level device

## Synopsis

```
int platform_device_register (struct platform_device * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

platform device we're adding

## platform\_device\_unregister

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_device_unregister` — unregister a platform-level device

## Synopsis

```
void platform_device_unregister (struct platform_device *  
pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

platform device we're unregistering



## Description

Unregistration is done in 2 steps. First we release all resources and remove it from the subsystem, then we drop reference count by calling `platform_device_put`.

# platform\_device\_register\_resndata

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_device_register_resndata` — add a platform-level device with resources and platform-specific data

## Synopsis

```
struct platform_device * platform_device_register_resndata
(struct device * parent, const char * name, int id, const
struct resource * res, unsigned int num, const void * data,
size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*parent*

parent device for the device we're adding

*name*

base name of the device we're adding

*id*

instance id

*res*

set of resources that needs to be allocated for the device

*num*

number of resources

*data*

platform specific data for this platform device

*size*

size of platform specific data

## Description

Returns struct `platform_device` pointer on success, or `ERR_PTR` on error.

# platform\_driver\_register

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_driver_register` — register a driver for platform-level devices

## Synopsis

```
int platform_driver_register (struct platform_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

platform driver structure

# platform\_driver\_unregister

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_driver_unregister` — unregister a driver for platform-level devices

## Synopsis

```
void platform_driver_unregister (struct platform_driver *  
drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

platform driver structure

# platform\_driver\_probe

**LINUX**

## Name

`platform_driver_probe` — register driver for non-hotpluggable device

## Synopsis

```
int platform_driver_probe (struct platform_driver * drv, int
(*probe) (struct platform_device *));
```

## Arguments

*drv*

platform driver structure

*probe*

the driver probe routine, probably from an `__init` section

## Description

Use this instead of `platform_driver_register` when you know the device is not hotpluggable and has already been registered, and you want to remove its run-once `probe` infrastructure from memory after the driver has bound to the device.

One typical use for this would be with drivers for controllers integrated into system-on-chip processors, where the controller devices have been configured as part of board setup.

Returns zero if the driver registered and bound to a device, else returns a negative error code and with the driver not registered.

# platform\_create\_bundle

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`platform_create_bundle` — register driver and create corresponding device

## Synopsis

```
struct platform_device * platform_create_bundle (struct
platform_driver * driver, int (*probe) (struct platform_device
*), struct resource * res, unsigned int n_res, const void *
data, size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*driver*

platform driver structure

*probe*

the driver probe routine, probably from an `__init` section

*res*

set of resources that needs to be allocated for the device

*n\_res*

number of resources

*data*

platform specific data for this platform device

*size*

size of platform specific data

## Description

Use this in legacy-style modules that probe hardware directly and register a single platform device and corresponding platform driver.

Returns struct platform\_device pointer on success, or ERR\_PTR on error.

## bus\_for\_each\_dev

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

bus\_for\_each\_dev — device iterator.

## Synopsis

```
int bus_for_each_dev (struct bus_type * bus, struct device *  
start, void * data, int (*fn) (struct device *, void *));
```

## Arguments

*bus*

bus type.

*start*

device to start iterating from.

*data*

data for the callback.

*fn*

function to be called for each device.

## Description

Iterate over *bus*'s list of devices, and call *fn* for each, passing it *data*. If *start* is not NULL, we use that device to begin iterating from.

We check the return of *fn* each time. If it returns anything other than 0, we break out and return that value.

## NOTE

The device that returns a non-zero value is not retained in any way, nor is its refcount incremented. If the caller needs to retain this data, it should do so, and increment the reference count in the supplied callback.

# bus\_find\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`bus_find_device` — device iterator for locating a particular device.

## Synopsis

```
struct device * bus_find_device (struct bus_type * bus, struct
device * start, void * data, int (*match) (struct device *dev,
void *data));
```

## Arguments

*bus*

bus type

*start*

Device to begin with

*data*

Data to pass to match function

*match*

Callback function to check device

## Description

This is similar to the `bus_for_each_dev` function above, but it returns a reference to a device that is 'found' for later use, as determined by the *match* callback.

The callback should return 0 if the device doesn't match and non-zero if it does. If the callback returns non-zero, this function will return to the caller and not iterate over any more devices.

## bus\_find\_device\_by\_name

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`bus_find_device_by_name` — device iterator for locating a particular device of a specific name



## Synopsis

```
struct device * bus_find_device_by_name (struct bus_type *  
bus, struct device * start, const char * name);
```

## Arguments

*bus*

bus type

*start*

Device to begin with

*name*

name of the device to match

## Description

This is similar to the `bus_find_device` function above, but it handles searching by a name automatically, no need to write another `strcmp` matching function.

## `bus_for_each_drv`

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`bus_for_each_drv` — driver iterator

## Synopsis

```
int bus_for_each_drv (struct bus_type * bus, struct
device_driver * start, void * data, int (*fn) (struct
device_driver *, void *));
```

## Arguments

*bus*

bus we're dealing with.

*start*

driver to start iterating on.

*data*

data to pass to the callback.

*fn*

function to call for each driver.

## Description

This is nearly identical to the device iterator above. We iterate over each driver that belongs to *bus*, and call *fn* for each. If *fn* returns anything but 0, we break out and return it. If *start* is not NULL, we use it as the head of the list.

## NOTE

we don't return the driver that returns a non-zero value, nor do we leave the reference count incremented for that driver. If the caller needs to know that info, it must set it in the callback. It must also be sure to increment the refcount so it doesn't disappear before returning to the caller.

# bus\_rescan\_devices

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`bus_rescan_devices` — rescan devices on the bus for possible drivers

### Synopsis

```
int bus_rescan_devices (struct bus_type * bus);
```

### Arguments

*bus*

the bus to scan.

### Description

This function will look for devices on the bus with no driver attached and rescan it against existing drivers to see if it matches any by calling `device_attach` for the unbound devices.

# device\_reprobe

## LINUX

## Name

`device_reprobe` — remove driver for a device and probe for a new driver

## Synopsis

```
int device_reprobe (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

the device to reprobe

## Description

This function detaches the attached driver (if any) for the given device and restarts the driver probing process. It is intended to use if probing criteria changed during a devices lifetime and driver attachment should change accordingly.

# bus\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`bus_register` — register a bus with the system.

## Synopsis

```
int bus_register (struct bus_type * bus);
```

## Arguments

*bus*

bus.

## Description

Once we have that, we registered the bus with the kobject infrastructure, then register the children subsystems it has: the devices and drivers that belong to the bus.

## bus\_unregister

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`bus_unregister` — remove a bus from the system

## Synopsis

```
void bus_unregister (struct bus_type * bus);
```

## Arguments

*bus*

`bus.`

## Description

Unregister the child subsystems and the bus itself. Finally, we call `bus_put` to release the refcount

## 2.3. Device Drivers Power Management

### `dpm_resume_noirq`

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`dpm_resume_noirq` — Execute “early resume” callbacks for non-sysdev devices.

### Synopsis

```
void dpm_resume_noirq (pm_message_t state);
```

## Arguments

*state*

PM transition of the system being carried out.

## Description

Call the “noirq” resume handlers for all devices marked as DPM\_OFF\_IRQ and enable device drivers to receive interrupts.

# dpm\_resume\_end

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`dpm_resume_end` — Execute “resume” callbacks and complete system transition.

## Synopsis

```
void dpm_resume_end (pm_message_t state);
```

## Arguments

*state*

PM transition of the system being carried out.

## Description

Execute “resume” callbacks for all devices and complete the PM transition of the system.

# dpm\_suspend\_noirq

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`dpm_suspend_noirq` — Execute “late suspend” callbacks for non-sysdev devices.

## Synopsis

```
int dpm_suspend_noirq (pm_message_t state);
```

## Arguments

*state*

PM transition of the system being carried out.

## Description

Prevent device drivers from receiving interrupts and call the “noirq” suspend handlers for all non-sysdev devices.



# dpm\_suspend\_start

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`dpm_suspend_start` — Prepare devices for PM transition and suspend them.

### Synopsis

```
int dpm_suspend_start (pm_message_t state);
```

### Arguments

*state*

PM transition of the system being carried out.

### Description

Prepare all non-sysdev devices for system PM transition and execute “suspend” callbacks for them.

# device\_pm\_wait\_for\_dev

## LINUX

## Name

`device_pm_wait_for_dev` — Wait for suspend/resume of a device to complete.

## Synopsis

```
int device_pm_wait_for_dev (struct device * subordinate,  
struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*subordinate*

Device that needs to wait for *dev*.

*dev*

Device to wait for.

## dpm\_for\_each\_dev

### LINUX

## Name

`dpm_for_each_dev` — device iterator.

## Synopsis

```
void dpm_for_each_dev (void * data, void (*fn) (struct device  
*, void *));
```

## Arguments

*data*

data for the callback.

*fn*

function to be called for each device.

## Description

Iterate over devices in `dpm_list`, and call *fn* for each device, passing it *data*.

## 2.4. Device Drivers ACPI Support

### `acpi_bus_register_driver`

#### **LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### **Name**

`acpi_bus_register_driver` — register a driver with the ACPI bus

## Synopsis

```
int acpi_bus_register_driver (struct acpi_driver * driver);
```

## Arguments

*driver*

driver being registered

## Description

Registers a driver with the ACPI bus. Searches the namespace for all devices that match the driver's criteria and binds. Returns zero for success or a negative error status for failure.

# acpi\_bus\_unregister\_driver

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`acpi_bus_unregister_driver` — unregisters a driver with the APIC bus

## Synopsis

```
void acpi_bus_unregister_driver (struct acpi_driver * driver);
```

## Arguments

*driver*

driver to unregister

## Description

Unregisters a driver with the ACPI bus. Searches the namespace for all devices that match the driver's criteria and unbinds.

# acpi\_bus\_driver\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`acpi_bus_driver_init` — add a device to a driver

## Synopsis

```
int acpi_bus_driver_init (struct acpi_device * device, struct  
acpi_driver * driver);
```

## Arguments

*device*

the device to add and initialize

*driver*

driver for the device

## Description

Used to initialize a device via its device driver. Called whenever a driver is bound to a device. Invokes the driver's `add ops`.

## 2.5. Device drivers PnP support

### pnp\_register\_protocol

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`pnp_register_protocol` — adds a pnp protocol to the pnp layer

#### Synopsis

```
int pnp_register_protocol (struct pnp_protocol * protocol);
```

#### Arguments

*protocol*

pointer to the corresponding `pnp_protocol` structure

#### Ex protocols

ISAPNP, PNPBIOS, etc

# pnp\_unregister\_protocol

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`pnp_unregister_protocol` — removes a pnp protocol from the pnp layer

### Synopsis

```
void pnp_unregister_protocol (struct pnp_protocol * protocol);
```

### Arguments

*protocol*

pointer to the corresponding `pnp_protocol` structure

# pnp\_request\_card\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`pnp_request_card_device` — Searches for a PnP device under the specified card

## Synopsis

```
struct pnp_dev * pnp_request_card_device (struct pnp_card_link  
* clink, const char * id, struct pnp_dev * from);
```

## Arguments

*clink*

pointer to the card link, cannot be NULL

*id*

pointer to a PnP ID structure that explains the rules for finding the device

*from*

Starting place to search from. If NULL it will start from the beginning.

## pnp\_release\_card\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pnp_release_card_device` — call this when the driver no longer needs the device

## Synopsis

```
void pnp_release_card_device (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```



## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the PnP device structure

# pnP\_register\_card\_driver

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pnP_register_card_driver` — registers a PnP card driver with the PnP Layer

## Synopsis

```
int pnP_register_card_driver (struct pnp_card_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

pointer to the driver to register

# pnP\_unregister\_card\_driver

**LINUX**

## Name

`pnp_unregister_card_driver` — unregisters a PnP card driver from the PnP Layer

## Synopsis

```
void pnp_unregister_card_driver (struct pnp_card_driver *  
drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

pointer to the driver to unregister

# pnp\_add\_id

## LINUX

## Name

`pnp_add_id` — adds an EISA id to the specified device

## Synopsis

```
struct pnp_id * pnp_add_id (struct pnp_dev * dev, const char *  
id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired device

*id*

pointer to an EISA id string

## pnp\_start\_dev

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pnp_start_dev` — low-level start of the PnP device

## Synopsis

```
int pnp_start_dev (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired device

## Description

assumes that resources have already been allocated

# pnp\_stop\_dev

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pnp_stop_dev` — low-level disable of the PnP device

## Synopsis

```
int pnp_stop_dev (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired device

## Description

does not free resources

# pnp\_activate\_dev

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`pnp_activate_dev` — activates a PnP device for use

### Synopsis

```
int pnp_activate_dev (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired device

### Description

does not validate or set resources so be careful.

# pnp\_disable\_dev

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`pnp_disable_dev` — disables device

## Synopsis

```
int pnp_disable_dev (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired device

## Description

inform the correct pnp protocol so that resources can be used by other devices

## pnp\_is\_active

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`pnp_is_active` — Determines if a device is active based on its current resources

## Synopsis

```
int pnp_is_active (struct pnp_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to the desired PnP device

## 2.6. Userspace IO devices

### uio\_event\_notify

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uio_event_notify` — trigger an interrupt event

### Synopsis

```
void uio_event_notify (struct uio_info * info);
```

### Arguments

*info*

UIO device capabilities

# \_\_uio\_register\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__uio_register_device` — register a new userspace IO device

### Synopsis

```
int __uio_register_device (struct module * owner, struct
device * parent, struct uio_info * info);
```

### Arguments

*owner*

module that creates the new device

*parent*

parent device

*info*

UIO device capabilities

### Description

returns zero on success or a negative error code.



# uio\_unregister\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uio_unregister_device` — unregister a industrial IO device

### Synopsis

```
void uio_unregister_device (struct uio_info * info);
```

### Arguments

*info*

UIO device capabilities

# struct uio\_mem

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct uio_mem` — description of a UIO memory region

### Synopsis

```
struct uio_mem {
```

```
    const char * name;  
    unsigned long addr;  
    unsigned long size;  
    int memtype;  
    void __iomem * internal_addr;  
    struct uio_map * map;  
};
```

## Members

name

name of the memory region for identification

addr

address of the device's memory

size

size of IO

memtype

type of memory addr points to

internal\_addr

ioremap-ped version of addr, for driver internal use

map

for use by the UIO core only.

## struct uio\_port

**LINUX**

## Name

`struct uio_port` — description of a UIO port region

## Synopsis

```
struct uio_port {  
    const char * name;  
    unsigned long start;  
    unsigned long size;  
    int porttype;  
    struct uio_portio * portio;  
};
```

## Members

`name`

name of the port region for identification

`start`

start of port region

`size`

size of port region

`porttype`

type of port (see `UIO_PORT_*` below)

`portio`

for use by the UIO core only.

# struct uio\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

struct uio\_info — UIO device capabilities

### Synopsis

```
struct uio_info {
    struct uio_device * uio_dev;
    const char * name;
    const char * version;
    struct uio_mem mem[MAX_UIO_MAPS];
    struct uio_port port[MAX_UIO_PORT_REGIONS];
    long irq;
    unsigned long irq_flags;
    void * priv;
    irqreturn_t (* handler) (int irq, struct uio_info *dev_info);
    int (* mmap) (struct uio_info *info, struct vm_area_struct *vma);
    int (* open) (struct uio_info *info, struct inode *inode);
    int (* release) (struct uio_info *info, struct inode *inode);
    int (* irqcontrol) (struct uio_info *info, s32 irq_on);
};
```

### Members

uio\_dev

the UIO device this info belongs to

name

device name

version

device driver version

`mem[MAX_UIO_MAPS]`

list of mappable memory regions, size==0 for end of list

`port[MAX_UIO_PORT_REGIONS]`

list of port regions, size==0 for end of list

`irq`

interrupt number or `UIO_IRQ_CUSTOM`

`irq_flags`

flags for `request_irq`

`priv`

optional private data

`handler`

the device's irq handler

`mmap`

mmap operation for this uio device

`open`

open operation for this uio device

`release`

release operation for this uio device

`irqcontrol`

disable/enable irqs when 0/1 is written to `/dev/uioX`



# Chapter 3. Parallel Port Devices

## parport\_yield

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_yield` — relinquish a parallel port temporarily

### Synopsis

```
int parport_yield (struct pardevice * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

a device on the parallel port

### Description

This function relinquishes the port if it would be helpful to other drivers to do so. Afterwards it tries to reclaim the port using `parport_claim`, and the return value is the same as for `parport_claim`. If it fails, the port is left unclaimed and it is the driver's responsibility to reclaim the port.

The `parport_yield` and `parport_yield_blocking` functions are for marking points in the driver at which other drivers may claim the port and use their devices. Yielding the port is similar to releasing it and reclaiming it, but is more efficient because no action is taken if there are no other devices needing the port. In fact, nothing is done even if there are other devices waiting but the current device is still

within its “timeslice”. The default timeslice is half a second, but it can be adjusted via the `/proc` interface.

## parport\_yield\_blocking

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_yield_blocking` — relinquish a parallel port temporarily

### Synopsis

```
int parport_yield_blocking (struct pardevice * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

a device on the parallel port

### Description

This function relinquishes the port if it would be helpful to other drivers to do so. Afterwards it tries to reclaim the port using `parport_claim_or_block`, and the return value is the same as for `parport_claim_or_block`.



# parport\_wait\_event

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_wait_event` — wait for an event on a parallel port

### Synopsis

```
int parport_wait_event (struct parport * port, signed long
timeout);
```

### Arguments

*port*

port to wait on

*timeout*

time to wait (in jiffies)

### Description

This function waits for up to *timeout* jiffies for an interrupt to occur on a parallel port. If the port timeout is set to zero, it returns immediately.

If an interrupt occurs before the timeout period elapses, this function returns zero immediately. If it times out, it returns one. An error code less than zero indicates an error (most likely a pending signal), and the calling code should finish what it's doing as soon as it can.

# parport\_wait\_peripheral

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_wait_peripheral` — wait for status lines to change in 35ms

### Synopsis

```
int parport_wait_peripheral (struct parport * port, unsigned
char mask, unsigned char result);
```

### Arguments

*port*

port to watch

*mask*

status lines to watch

*result*

desired values of chosen status lines

### Description

This function waits until the masked status lines have the desired values, or until 35ms have elapsed (see IEEE 1284-1994 page 24 to 25 for why this value in particular is hardcoded). The *mask* and *result* parameters are bitmasks, with the bits defined by the constants in `parport.h`: `PARPORT_STATUS_BUSY`, and so on.

The port is polled quickly to start off with, in anticipation of a fast response from the peripheral. This fast polling time is configurable (using `/proc`), and defaults to

500usec. If the timeout for this port (see `parport_set_timeout`) is zero, the fast polling time is 35ms, and this function does not call `schedule`.

If the timeout for this port is non-zero, after the fast polling fails it uses `parport_wait_event` to wait for up to 10ms, waking up if an interrupt occurs.

## parport\_negotiate

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_negotiate` — negotiate an IEEE 1284 mode

### Synopsis

```
int parport_negotiate (struct parport * port, int mode);
```

### Arguments

*port*

port to use

*mode*

mode to negotiate to

### Description

Use this to negotiate to a particular IEEE 1284 transfer mode. The *mode* parameter should be one of the constants in `parport.h` starting `IEEE1284_MODE_xxx`.

The return value is 0 if the peripheral has accepted the negotiation to the mode specified, -1 if the peripheral is not IEEE 1284 compliant (or not present), or 1 if the peripheral has rejected the negotiation.

## parport\_write

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_write` — write a block of data to a parallel port

### Synopsis

```
ssize_t parport_write (struct parport * port, const void *  
buffer, size_t len);
```

### Arguments

*port*

port to write to

*buffer*

data buffer (in kernel space)

*len*

number of bytes of data to transfer

## Description

This will write up to *len* bytes of *buffer* to the port specified, using the IEEE 1284 transfer mode most recently negotiated to (using `parport_negotiate`), as long as that mode supports forward transfers (host to peripheral).

It is the caller's responsibility to ensure that the first *len* bytes of *buffer* are valid.

This function returns the number of bytes transferred (if zero or positive), or else an error code.

## parport\_read

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_read` — read a block of data from a parallel port

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t parport_read (struct parport * port, void * buffer,
size_t len);
```

## Arguments

*port*

port to read from

*buffer*

data buffer (in kernel space)

*len*

number of bytes of data to transfer

## Description

This will read up to *len* bytes of *buffer* to the port specified, using the IEEE 1284 transfer mode most recently negotiated to (using `parport_negotiate`), as long as that mode supports reverse transfers (peripheral to host).

It is the caller's responsibility to ensure that the first *len* bytes of *buffer* are available to write to.

This function returns the number of bytes transferred (if zero or positive), or else an error code.

# parport\_set\_timeout

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_set_timeout` — set the inactivity timeout for a device

## Synopsis

```
long parport_set_timeout (struct pardevice * dev, long  
inactivity);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device on a port

*inactivity*

inactivity timeout (in jiffies)

## Description

This sets the inactivity timeout for a particular device on a port. This affects functions like `parport_wait_peripheral`. The special value 0 means not to call `schedule` while dealing with this device.

The return value is the previous inactivity timeout.

Any callers of `parport_wait_event` for this device are woken up.

# parport\_register\_driver

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_register_driver` — register a parallel port device driver

## Synopsis

```
int parport_register_driver (struct parport_driver * drv);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

structure describing the driver

## Description

This can be called by a parallel port device driver in order to receive notifications about ports being found in the system, as well as ports no longer available.

The *drv* structure is allocated by the caller and must not be deallocated until after calling `parport_unregister_driver`.

The driver's `attach` function may block. The port that `attach` is given will be valid for the duration of the callback, but if the driver wants to take a copy of the pointer it must call `parport_get_port` to do so. Calling `parport_register_device` on that port will do this for you.

The driver's `detach` function may block. The port that `detach` is given will be valid for the duration of the callback, but if the driver wants to take a copy of the pointer it must call `parport_get_port` to do so.

Returns 0 on success. Currently it always succeeds.

## parport\_unregister\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_unregister_driver` — deregister a parallel port device driver

### Synopsis

```
void parport_unregister_driver (struct parport_driver * drv);
```



## Arguments

*drv*

structure describing the driver that was given to `parport_register_driver`

## Description

This should be called by a parallel port device driver that has registered itself using `parport_register_driver` when it is about to be unloaded.

When it returns, the driver's `attach` routine will no longer be called, and for each port that `attach` was called for, the `detach` routine will have been called.

All the driver's `attach` and `detach` calls are guaranteed to have finished by the time this function returns.

## parport\_get\_port

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_get_port` — increment a port's reference count

### Synopsis

```
struct parport * parport_get_port (struct parport * port);
```

## Arguments

*port*

the port

## Description

This ensures that a struct parport pointer remains valid until the matching `parport_put_port` call.

# parport\_put\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_put_port` — decrement a port's reference count

## Synopsis

```
void parport_put_port (struct parport * port);
```

## Arguments

*port*

the port

## Description

This should be called once for each call to `parport_get_port`, once the port is no longer needed.

# parport\_register\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_register_port` — register a parallel port

## Synopsis

```
struct parport * parport_register_port (unsigned long base,
int irq, int dma, struct parport_operations * ops);
```

## Arguments

*base*

base I/O address

*irq*

IRQ line

*dma*

DMA channel

*ops*

pointer to the port driver's port operations structure

## Description

When a parallel port (lowlevel) driver finds a port that should be made available to parallel port device drivers, it should call `parport_register_port`. The *base*, *irq*, and *dma* parameters are for the convenience of port drivers, and for ports where they aren't meaningful needn't be set to anything special. They can be altered afterwards by adjusting the relevant members of the `parport` structure that is returned and represents the port. They should not be tampered with after calling `parport_announce_port`, however.

If there are parallel port device drivers in the system that have registered themselves using `parport_register_driver`, they are not told about the port at this time; that is done by `parport_announce_port`.

The *ops* structure is allocated by the caller, and must not be deallocated before calling `parport_remove_port`.

If there is no memory to allocate a new `parport` structure, this function will return `NULL`.

## parport\_announce\_port

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_announce_port` — tell device drivers about a parallel port

### Synopsis

```
void parport_announce_port (struct parport * port);
```

## Arguments

*port*

parallel port to announce

## Description

After a port driver has registered a parallel port with `parport_register_port`, and performed any necessary initialisation or adjustments, it should call `parport_announce_port` in order to notify all device drivers that have called `parport_register_driver`. Their attach functions will be called, with *port* as the parameter.

# parport\_remove\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_remove_port` — deregister a parallel port

## Synopsis

```
void parport_remove_port (struct parport * port);
```

## Arguments

*port*

parallel port to deregister

## Description

When a parallel port driver is forcibly unloaded, or a parallel port becomes inaccessible, the port driver must call this function in order to deal with device drivers that still want to use it.

The `parport` structure associated with the port has its operations structure replaced with one containing 'null' operations that return errors or just don't do anything.

Any drivers that have registered themselves using `parport_register_driver` are notified that the port is no longer accessible by having their `detach` routines called with `port` as the parameter.

## parport\_register\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_register_device` — register a device on a parallel port

### Synopsis

```
struct pardevice * parport_register_device (struct parport *  
port, const char * name, int (*pf) (void *), void (*kf) (void  
*), void (*irq_func) (void *), int flags, void * handle);
```

### Arguments

*port*

port to which the device is attached

*name*

a name to refer to the device

*pf*

preemption callback

*kf*

kick callback (wake-up)

*irq\_func*

interrupt handler

*flags*

registration flags

*handle*

data for callback functions

## Description

This function, called by parallel port device drivers, declares that a device is connected to a port, and tells the system all it needs to know.

The *name* is allocated by the caller and must not be deallocated until the caller calls *parport\_unregister\_device* for that device.

The preemption callback function, *pf*, is called when this device driver has claimed access to the port but another device driver wants to use it. It is given *handle* as its parameter, and should return zero if it is willing for the system to release the port to another driver on its behalf. If it wants to keep control of the port it should return non-zero, and no action will be taken. It is good manners for the driver to try to release the port at the earliest opportunity after its preemption callback rejects a preemption attempt. Note that if a preemption callback is happy for preemption to go ahead, there is no need to release the port; it is done automatically. This function may not block, as it may be called from interrupt context. If the device driver does not support preemption, *pf* can be `NULL`.

The wake-up (“kick”) callback function, *kf*, is called when the port is available to be claimed for exclusive access; that is, *parport\_claim* is guaranteed to succeed when called from inside the wake-up callback function. If the driver wants to claim the port it should do so; otherwise, it need not take any action. This function may not block, as it may be called from interrupt context. If the device driver does not want to be explicitly invited to claim the port in this way, *kf* can be `NULL`.

The interrupt handler, *irq\_func*, is called when an interrupt arrives from the parallel port. Note that if a device driver wants to use interrupts it should use *parport\_enable\_irq*, and can also check the *irq* member of the *parport* structure representing the port.

The parallel port (lowlevel) driver is the one that has called *request\_irq* and whose interrupt handler is called first. This handler does whatever needs to be done to the hardware to acknowledge the interrupt (for PC-style ports there is nothing special to be done). It then tells the IEEE 1284 code about the interrupt, which may involve reacting to an IEEE 1284 event depending on the current IEEE 1284 phase. After this, it calls *irq\_func*. Needless to say, *irq\_func* will be called from interrupt context, and may not block.

The *PARPORT\_DEV\_EXCL* flag is for preventing port sharing, and so should only be used when sharing the port with other device drivers is impossible and would lead to incorrect behaviour. Use it sparingly! Normally, *flags* will be zero.

This function returns a pointer to a structure that represents the device on the port, or *NULL* if there is not enough memory to allocate space for that structure.

## parport\_unregister\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

*parport\_unregister\_device* — deregister a device on a parallel port

### Synopsis

```
void parport_unregister_device (struct pardevice * dev);
```



## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to structure representing device

## Description

This undoes the effect of `parport_register_device`.

# parport\_find\_number

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_find_number` — find a parallel port by number

## Synopsis

```
struct parport * parport_find_number (int number);
```

## Arguments

*number*

parallel port number

## Description

This returns the parallel port with the specified number, or `NULL` if there is none.

There is an implicit `parport_get_port` done already; to throw away the reference to the port that `parport_find_number` gives you, use `parport_put_port`.

## parport\_find\_base

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_find_base` — find a parallel port by base address

### Synopsis

```
struct parport * parport_find_base (unsigned long base);
```

### Arguments

*base*

base I/O address

### Description

This returns the parallel port with the specified base address, or `NULL` if there is none.

There is an implicit `parport_get_port` done already; to throw away the reference to the port that `parport_find_base` gives you, use `parport_put_port`.

# parport\_claim

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`parport_claim` — claim access to a parallel port device

### Synopsis

```
int parport_claim (struct pardevice * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

pointer to structure representing a device on the port

### Description

This function will not block and so can be used from interrupt context. If `parport_claim` succeeds in claiming access to the port it returns zero and the port is available to use. It may fail (returning non-zero) if the port is in use by another driver and that driver is not willing to relinquish control of the port.

# parport\_claim\_or\_block

## LINUX

## Name

`parport_claim_or_block` — claim access to a parallel port device

## Synopsis

```
int parport_claim_or_block (struct pardevice * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to structure representing a device on the port

## Description

This behaves like `parport_claim`, but will block if necessary to wait for the port to be free. A return value of 1 indicates that it slept; 0 means that it succeeded without needing to sleep. A negative error code indicates failure.

# parport\_release

## LINUX

## Name

`parport_release` — give up access to a parallel port device

## Synopsis

```
void parport_release (struct pardevice * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

pointer to structure representing parallel port device

## Description

This function cannot fail, but it should not be called without the port claimed. Similarly, if the port is already claimed you should not try claiming it again.

# parport\_open

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_open` — find a device by canonical device number

## Synopsis

```
struct pardevice * parport_open (int devnum, const char *  
name);
```

## Arguments

*devnum*

canonical device number

*name*

name to associate with the device

## Description

This function is similar to `parport_register_device`, except that it locates a device by its number rather than by the port it is attached to.

All parameters except for *devnum* are the same as for `parport_register_device`. The return value is the same as for `parport_register_device`.

## parport\_close

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`parport_close` — close a device opened with `parport_open`

## Synopsis

```
void parport_close (struct pardevice * dev);
```

## **Arguments**

*dev*

device to close

## **Description**

This is to `parport_open` as `parport_unregister_device` is to `parport_register_device`.





# Chapter 4. Message-based devices

## 4.1. Fusion message devices

### mpt\_register

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`mpt_register` — Register protocol-specific main callback handler.

#### Synopsis

```
u8 mpt_register (MPT_CALLBACK cbfunc, MPT_DRIVER_CLASS dclass,  
char * func_name);
```

#### Arguments

*cbfunc*

callback function pointer

*dclass*

Protocol driver's class (MPT\_DRIVER\_CLASS enum value)

*func\_name*

-- undescribed --

## Description

This routine is called by a protocol-specific driver (SCSI host, LAN, SCSI target) to register its reply callback routine. Each protocol-specific driver must do this before it will be able to use any IOC resources, such as obtaining request frames.

## NOTES

The SCSI protocol driver currently calls this routine thrice in order to register separate callbacks; one for “normal” SCSI IO; one for MptScsiTaskMgmt requests; one for Scan/DV requests.

Returns u8 valued “handle” in the range (and S.O.D. order) {N,...,7,6,5,...,1} if successful. A return value of MPT\_MAX\_PROTOCOL\_DRIVERS (including zero!) should be considered an error by the caller.

## mpt\_deregister

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_deregister` — Deregister a protocol drivers resources.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_deregister (u8 cb_idx);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

previously registered callback handle

## Description

Each protocol-specific driver should call this routine when its module is unloaded.

# mpt\_event\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_event_register` — Register protocol-specific event callback handler.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_event_register (u8 cb_idx, MPT_EVHANDLER ev_cbfunc);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

previously registered (via `mpt_register`) callback handle

*ev\_cbfunc*

callback function

## Description

This routine can be called by one or more protocol-specific drivers if/when they choose to be notified of MPT events.

Returns 0 for success.

# mpt\_event\_deregister

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_event_deregister` — Deregister protocol-specific event callback handler

### Synopsis

```
void mpt_event_deregister (u8 cb_idx);
```

### Arguments

*cb\_idx*

previously registered callback handle

### Description

Each protocol-specific driver should call this routine when it does not (or can no longer) handle events, or when its module is unloaded.

# mpt\_reset\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_reset_register` — Register protocol-specific IOC reset handler.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_reset_register (u8 cb_idx, MPT_RESETHANDLER  
reset_func);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

previously registered (via `mpt_register`) callback handle

*reset\_func*

reset function

## Description

This routine can be called by one or more protocol-specific drivers if/when they choose to be notified of IOC resets.

Returns 0 for success.

## `mpt_reset_deregister`

**LINUX**

## Name

`mpt_reset_deregister` — Deregister protocol-specific IOC reset handler.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_reset_deregister (u8 cb_idx);
```

## Arguments

`cb_idx`

previously registered callback handle

## Description

Each protocol-specific driver should call this routine when it does not (or can no longer) handle IOC reset handling, or when its module is unloaded.

# mpt\_device\_driver\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_device_driver_register` — Register device driver hooks

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_device_driver_register (struct mpt_pci_driver *  
dd_cbfunc, u8 cb_idx);
```

## Arguments

*dd\_cbfunc*

driver callbacks struct

*cb\_idx*

MPT protocol driver index

## mpt\_device\_driver\_deregister

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_device_driver_deregister` — DeRegister device driver hooks

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_device_driver_deregister (u8 cb_idx);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

MPT protocol driver index

# mpt\_get\_msg\_frame

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_get_msg_frame` — Obtain an MPT request frame from the pool

## Synopsis

```
MPT_FRAME_HDR* mpt_get_msg_frame (u8 cb_idx, MPT_ADAPTER *  
ioc);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

Handle of registered MPT protocol driver

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

## Description

Obtain an MPT request frame from the pool (of 1024) that are allocated per MPT adapter.



Returns pointer to a MPT request frame or `NULL` if none are available or IOC is not active.

## mpt\_put\_msg\_frame

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_put_msg_frame` — Send a protocol-specific MPT request frame to an IOC

### Synopsis

```
void mpt_put_msg_frame (u8 cb_idx, MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf);
```

### Arguments

*cb\_idx*

Handle of registered MPT protocol driver

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*mf*

Pointer to MPT request frame

## Description

This routine posts an MPT request frame to the request post FIFO of a specific MPT adapter.

# mpt\_put\_msg\_frame\_hi\_pri

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_put_msg_frame_hi_pri` — Send a hi-pri protocol-specific MPT request frame

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_put_msg_frame_hi_pri (u8 cb_idx, MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf);
```

## Arguments

*cb\_idx*

Handle of registered MPT protocol driver

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*mf*

Pointer to MPT request frame

## Description

Send a protocol-specific MPT request frame to an IOC using hi-priority request queue.

This routine posts an MPT request frame to the request post FIFO of a specific MPT adapter.

# mpt\_free\_msg\_frame

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_free_msg_frame` — Place MPT request frame back on FreeQ.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_free_msg_frame (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, MPT_FRAME_HDR *  
mf);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*mf*

Pointer to MPT request frame

## Description

This routine places a MPT request frame back on the MPT adapter's FreeQ.

# mpt\_send\_handshake\_request

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_send_handshake_request` — Send MPT request via doorbell handshake method.

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_send_handshake_request (u8 cb_idx, MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
int reqBytes, u32 * req, int sleepFlag);
```

### Arguments

*cb\_idx*

Handle of registered MPT protocol driver

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*reqBytes*

Size of the request in bytes

*req*

Pointer to MPT request frame

*sleepFlag*

Use schedule if CAN\_SLEEP else use udelay.

## Description

This routine is used exclusively to send MptScsiTaskMgmt requests since they are required to be sent via doorbell handshake.

## NOTE

It is the callers responsibility to byte-swap fields in the request which are greater than 1 byte in size.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# mpt\_verify\_adapter

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_verify_adapter` — Given IOC identifier, set pointer to its adapter structure.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_verify_adapter (int iocid, MPT_ADAPTER ** iocpp);
```

## Arguments

*iocid*

IOC unique identifier (integer)

*iocpp*

Pointer to pointer to IOC adapter

## Description

Given a unique IOC identifier, set pointer to the associated MPT adapter structure.

Returns iocid and sets iocpp if iocid is found. Returns -1 if iocid is not found.

## mpt\_attach

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_attach` — Install a PCI intelligent MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_attach (struct pci_dev * pdev, const struct  
pci_device_id * id);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to `pci_dev` structure

*id*

PCI device ID information

## Description

This routine performs all the steps necessary to bring the IOC of a MPT adapter to a OPERATIONAL state. This includes registering memory regions, registering the interrupt, and allocating request and reply memory pools.

This routine also pre-fetches the LAN MAC address of a Fibre Channel MPT adapter.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## TODO

Add support for polled controllers

## mpt\_detach

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_detach` — Remove a PCI intelligent MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_detach (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to `pci_dev` structure

## mpt\_suspend

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_suspend` — Fusion MPT base driver suspend routine.

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_suspend (struct pci_dev * pdev, pm_message_t state);
```

### Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to `pci_dev` structure

*state*

new state to enter

## mpt\_resume

### LINUX



## Name

`mpt_resume` — Fusion MPT base driver resume routine.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_resume (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to `pci_dev` structure

# mpt\_GetIocState

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_GetIocState` — Get the current state of a MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
u32 mpt_GetIocState (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int cooked);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*cooked*

Request raw or cooked IOC state

## Description

Returns all IOC Doorbell register bits if `cooked==0`, else just the Doorbell bits in `MPI_IOC_STATE_MASK`.

# mpt\_alloc\_fw\_memory

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_alloc_fw_memory` — allocate firmware memory

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_alloc_fw_memory (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int size);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*size*

total FW bytes

## Description

If memory has already been allocated, the same (cached) value is returned.

Return 0 if successful, or non-zero for failure

# mpt\_free\_fw\_memory

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_free_fw_memory` — free firmware memory

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_free_fw_memory (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

## Description

If `alt_img` is NULL, delete from `ioc` structure. Else, delete a secondary image in same format.

# mptbase\_sas\_persist\_operation

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptbase_sas_persist_operation` — Perform operation on SAS Persistent Table

### Synopsis

```
int mptbase_sas_persist_operation (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8  
persist_opcode);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*persist\_opcode*

see below

### Description

MPI\_SAS\_OP\_CLEAR\_NOT\_PRESENT - Free all persist TargetID mappings for devices not currently present. MPI\_SAS\_OP\_CLEAR\_ALL\_PERSISTENT - Clear all persist TargetID mappings

## NOTE

Don't use not this function during interrupt time.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero error

# mpt\_raid\_phys\_disk\_pg0

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg0` — returns phys disk page zero

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg0 (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8  
phys_disk_num, RaidPhysDiskPage0_t * phys_disk);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Structure

*phys\_disk\_num*

io unit unique phys disk num generated by the ioc

*phys\_disk*

requested payload data returned

## Return

0 on success -EFAULT if read of config page header fails or data pointer not NULL  
-ENOMEM if pci\_alloc failed

# mpt\_raid\_phys\_disk\_get\_num\_paths

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_raid_phys_disk_get_num_paths` — returns number paths associated to this `phys_num`

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_raid_phys_disk_get_num_paths (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8  
phys_disk_num);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Structure

*phys\_disk\_num*

io unit unique phys disk num generated by the ioc

## Return

returns number paths

# mpt\_raid\_phys\_disk\_pg1

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg1` — returns phys disk page 1

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_raid_phys_disk_pg1 (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8
phys_disk_num, RaidPhysDiskPage1_t * phys_disk);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Structure

*phys\_disk\_num*

io unit unique phys disk num generated by the ioc

*phys\_disk*

requested payload data returned

### Return

0 on success -EFAULT if read of config page header fails or data pointer not NULL  
-ENOMEM if pci\_alloc failed

# mpt\_findImVolumes

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_findImVolumes` — Identify IDs of hidden disks and RAID Volumes

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_findImVolumes (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Strucutre

### Return

0 on success -EFAULT if read of config page header fails or data pointer not NULL  
-ENOMEM if pci\_alloc failed

# mpt\_config

## LINUX



## Name

`mpt_config` — Generic function to issue config message

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_config (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, CONFIGPARMS * pCfg);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to an adapter structure

*pCfg*

Pointer to a configuration structure. Struct contains action, page address, direction, physical address and pointer to a configuration page header Page header is updated.

## Description

Returns 0 for success -EPERM if not allowed due to ISR context -EAGAIN if no msg frames currently available -EFAULT for non-successful reply or no reply (timeout)

## `mpt_print_ioc_summary`

**LINUX**

## Name

`mpt_print_ioc_summary` — Write ASCII summary of IOC to a buffer.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_print_ioc_summary (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, char * buffer,  
int * size, int len, int showlan);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*buffer*

Pointer to buffer where IOC summary info should be written

*size*

Pointer to number of bytes we wrote (set by this routine)

*len*

Offset at which to start writing in buffer

*showlan*

Display LAN stuff?

## Description

This routine writes (english readable) ASCII text, which represents a summary of IOC information, to a buffer.

# mpt\_set\_taskmgmt\_in\_progress\_flag

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_set_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag` — set flags associated with task management

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_set_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

### Description

Returns 0 for SUCCESS or -1 if FAILED.

If -1 is return, then it was not possible to set the flags

# mpt\_clear\_taskmgmt\_in\_progress\_flag

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_clear_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag` — clear flags associated with task management

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_clear_taskmgmt_in_progress_flag (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

# mpt\_halt\_firmware

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_halt_firmware` — Halts the firmware if it is operational and panic the kernel

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_halt_firmware (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

# mpt\_Soft\_Hard\_ResetHandler

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_Soft\_Hard\_ResetHandler — Try less expensive reset

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_Soft_Hard_ResetHandler (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Indicates if sleep or schedule must be called.

## Description

Returns 0 for SUCCESS or -1 if FAILED. Try for softreset first, only if it fails go for expensive HardReset.

# mpt\_HardResetHandler

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_HardResetHandler` — Generic reset handler

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_HardResetHandler (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int sleepFlag);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Indicates if sleep or schedule must be called.

### Description

Issues SCSI Task Management call based on input arg values. If TaskMgmt fails, returns associated SCSI request.

### Remark

`_HardResetHandler` can be invoked from an interrupt thread (timer) or a non-interrupt thread. In the former, must not call `schedule`.

## Note

A return of -1 is a FATAL error case, as it means a FW reload/initialization failed.  
Returns 0 for SUCCESS or -1 if FAILED.

# mpt\_set\_debug\_level

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_set_debug_level` — global setting of the `mpt_debug_level` found via `/sys/module/mptbase/parameters/mpt_debug_level`

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_set_debug_level (const char * val, struct kernel_param  
* kp);
```

## Arguments

*val*

-- undescribed --

*kp*

## Description

Returns

## mpt\_get\_cb\_idx

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_get_cb_idx` — obtain `cb_idx` for registered driver

### Synopsis

```
u8 mpt_get_cb_idx (MPT_DRIVER_CLASS dclass);
```

### Arguments

*dclass*

class driver enum

### Description

Returns `cb_idx`, or zero means it wasn't found

## mpt\_is\_discovery\_complete

### LINUX



## Name

`mpt_is_discovery_complete` — determine if discovery has completed

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_is_discovery_complete (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

per adapter instance

## Description

Returns 1 when discovery completed, else zero.

# mpt\_remove\_dead\_ioc\_func

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_remove_dead_ioc_func` — kthread context to remove dead ioc

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_remove_dead_ioc_func (void * arg);
```

## Arguments

*arg*

input argument, used to derive ioc

## Description

Return 0 if controller is removed from pci subsystem. Return -1 for other case.

## mpt\_fault\_reset\_work

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_fault\_reset\_work — work performed on workq after ioc fault

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_fault_reset_work (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

input argument, used to derive ioc

## mpt\_interrupt

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_interrupt` — MPT adapter (IOC) specific interrupt handler.

## Synopsis

```
irqreturn_t mpt_interrupt (int irq, void * bus_id);
```

## Arguments

*irq*

irq number (not used)

*bus\_id*

bus identifier cookie == pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

## Description

This routine is registered via the `request_irq` kernel API call, and handles all interrupts generated from a specific MPT adapter (also referred to as a IO Controller or IOC). This routine must clear the interrupt from the adapter and does

so by reading the reply FIFO. Multiple replies may be processed per single call to this routine.

This routine handles register-level access of the adapter but dispatches (calls) a protocol-specific callback routine to handle the protocol-specific details of the MPT request completion.

## mptbase\_reply

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptbase_reply` — MPT base driver's callback routine

### Synopsis

```
int mptbase_reply (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, MPT_FRAME_HDR * req,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * reply);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*req*

Pointer to original MPT request frame

*reply*

Pointer to MPT reply frame (NULL if TurboReply)

## Description

MPT base driver's callback routine; all base driver "internal" request/reply processing is routed here. Currently used for EventNotification and EventAck handling.

Returns 1 indicating original alloc'd request frame ptr should be freed, or 0 if it shouldn't.

## mpt\_add\_sge

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_add_sge` — Place a simple 32 bit SGE at address `pAddr`.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_add_sge (void * pAddr, u32 flagslength, dma_addr_t  
dma_addr);
```

## Arguments

*pAddr*

virtual address for SGE

*flagslength*

SGE flags and data transfer length

*dma\_addr*

Physical address

## Description

This routine places a MPT request frame back on the MPT adapter's FreeQ.

# mpt\_add\_sge\_64bit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_add_sge_64bit` — Place a simple 64 bit SGE at address `pAddr`.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_add_sge_64bit (void * pAddr, u32 flagslength,  
dma_addr_t dma_addr);
```

## Arguments

*pAddr*

virtual address for SGE

*flagslength*

SGE flags and data transfer length

*dma\_addr*

Physical address

## Description

This routine places a MPT request frame back on the MPT adapter's FreeQ.

# mpt\_add\_sge\_64bit\_1078

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_add_sge_64bit_1078` — Place a simple 64 bit SGE at address `pAddr` (1078 workaround).

### Synopsis

```
void mpt_add_sge_64bit_1078 (void * pAddr, u32 flagslength,  
dma_addr_t dma_addr);
```

### Arguments

*pAddr*

virtual address for SGE

*flagslength*

SGE flags and data transfer length

*dma\_addr*

Physical address

### Description

This routine places a MPT request frame back on the MPT adapter's FreeQ.

# mpt\_add\_chain

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_add_chain` — Place a 32 bit chain SGE at address `pAddr`.

### Synopsis

```
void mpt_add_chain (void * pAddr, u8 next, u16 length,  
dma_addr_t dma_addr);
```

### Arguments

*pAddr*

virtual address for SGE

*next*

nextChainOffset value (u32's)

*length*

length of next SGL segment

*dma\_addr*

Physical address

# mpt\_add\_chain\_64bit

## LINUX



## Name

`mpt_add_chain_64bit` — Place a 64 bit chain SGE at address `pAddr`.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_add_chain_64bit (void * pAddr, u8 next, u16 length,
dma_addr_t dma_addr);
```

## Arguments

*pAddr*

virtual address for SGE

*next*

nextChainOffset value (u32's)

*length*

length of next SGL segment

*dma\_addr*

Physical address

## `mpt_host_page_access_control`

**LINUX**

## Name

`mpt_host_page_access_control` — control the IOC's Host Page Buffer access

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_host_page_access_control (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8
access_control_value, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*access\_control\_value*

define bits below

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Provides mechanism for the host driver to control the IOC's Host Page Buffer access.

Access Control Value - bits[15:12] 0h Reserved 1h Enable Access {  
MPI\_DB\_HPBACK\_ENABLE\_ACCESS } 2h Disable Access {  
MPI\_DB\_HPBACK\_DISABLE\_ACCESS } 3h Free Buffer {  
MPI\_DB\_HPBACK\_FREE\_BUFFER }

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# mpt\_host\_page\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_host_page_alloc` — allocate system memory for the fw

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_host_page_alloc (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, pIOCInit_t  
ioc_init);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to pointer to IOC adapter

*ioc\_init*

Pointer to ioc init config page

### Description

If we already allocated memory in past, then resend the same pointer. Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# mpt\_get\_product\_name

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_get_product_name` — returns product string

## Synopsis

```
const char* mpt_get_product_name (u16 vendor, u16 device, u8
revision);
```

## Arguments

*vendor*

pci vendor id

*device*

pci device id

*revision*

pci revision id

## Description

Returns product string displayed when driver loads, in `/proc/mpt/summary` and `/sysfs/class/scsi_host/host<X>/version_product`

## `convert_to_kb`

**LINUX**

## Name

`convert_to_kb` — map in memory mapped io

## Synopsis

```
convert_to_kb ( x );
```

## Arguments

`x`

-- undescribed --

# mpt\_do\_ioc\_recovery

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_do_ioc_recovery` — Initialize or recover MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_do_ioc_recovery (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32 reason, int
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*reason*

Event word / reason

*sleepFlag*

Use schedule if CAN\_SLEEP else use udelay.

## Description

This routine performs all the steps necessary to bring the IOC to a OPERATIONAL state.

This routine also pre-fetches the LAN MAC address of a Fibre Channel MPT adapter.

## Returns

0 for success -1 if failed to get board READY -2 if READY but IOCFacts Failed -3 if READY but PrimeIOCFifos Failed -4 if READY but IOCInit Failed -5 if failed to enable\_device and/or request\_selected\_regions -6 if failed to upload firmware

# mpt\_detect\_bound\_ports

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_detect\_bound\_ports — Search for matching PCI bus/dev\_function

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_detect_bound_ports (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, struct pci_dev
* pdev);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

*pdev*

Pointer to (struct pci\_dev) structure

## Description

Search for PCI bus/dev\_function which matches PCI bus/dev\_function (+/-1) for newly discovered 929, 929X, 1030 or 1035.

If match on PCI dev\_function +/-1 is found, bind the two MPT adapters using alt\_ioc pointer fields in their MPT\_ADAPTER structures.

## mpt\_adapter\_disable

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

mpt\_adapter\_disable — Disable misbehaving MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_adapter_disable (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

## mpt\_adapter\_dispose

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_adapter_dispose` — Free all resources associated with an MPT adapter

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_adapter_dispose (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure



## Description

This routine unregisters h/w resources and frees all alloc'd memory associated with a MPT adapter structure.

# MptDisplayIocCapabilities

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`MptDisplayIocCapabilities` — Display IOC's capabilities.

## Synopsis

```
void MptDisplayIocCapabilities (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter structure

# MakelocReady

## LINUX

## Name

`MakeIocReady` — Get IOC to a READY state, using KickStart if needed.

## Synopsis

```
int MakeIocReady (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int force, int  
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*force*

Force hard KickStart of IOC

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Returns

1 - DIAG reset and READY 0 - READY initially OR soft reset and READY -1 -  
Any failure on KickStart -2 - Msg Unit Reset Failed -3 - IO Unit Reset Failed -4 -  
IOC owned by a PEER

## GetlocFacts

**LINUX**

## Name

`GetIocFacts` — Send IOCFacts request to MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int GetIocFacts (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int sleepFlag, int  
reason);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

*reason*

If recovery, only update facts.

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## GetPortFacts

**LINUX**

## Name

`GetPortFacts` — Send `PortFacts` request to MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int GetPortFacts (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int portnum, int  
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to `MPT_ADAPTER` structure

*portnum*

Port number

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## SendIoCInit

**LINUX**

## Name

`SendIocInit` — Send IOCInit request to MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int SendIocInit (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Send IOCInit followed by PortEnable to bring IOC to OPERATIONAL state.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# SendPortEnable

## LINUX

## Name

`SendPortEnable` — Send PortEnable request to MPT adapter port.

## Synopsis

```
int SendPortEnable (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int portnum, int  
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*portnum*

Port number to enable

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Send PortEnable to bring IOC to OPERATIONAL state.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## mpt\_do\_upload

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_do\_upload — Construct and Send FWUpload request to MPT adapter port.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_do_upload (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Returns 0 for success, >0 for handshake failure <0 for fw upload failure.

## Remark

If bound IOC and a successful FWUpload was performed on the bound IOC, the second image is discarded and memory is free'd. Both channels must upload to prevent IOC from running in degraded mode.

## mpt\_downloadboot

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_downloadboot — DownloadBoot code

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_downloadboot (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, MpiFwHeader_t *  
pFwHeader, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*pFwHeader*

Pointer to firmware header info

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

FwDownloadBoot requires Programmed IO access.

Returns 0 for success -1 FW Image size is 0 -2 No valid cached\_fw Pointer <0 for fw upload failure.

## KickStart

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

KickStart — Perform hard reset of MPT adapter.



## Synopsis

```
int KickStart (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int force, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*force*

Force hard reset

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

This routine places MPT adapter in diagnostic mode via the WriteSequence register, and then performs a hard reset of adapter via the Diagnostic register.

## Inputs

sleepflag - CAN\_SLEEP (non-interrupt thread) or NO\_SLEEP (interrupt thread, use mdelay) force - 1 if doorbell active, board fault state board operational, IOC\_RECOVERY or IOC\_BRINGUP and there is an alt\_ioc. 0 else

## Returns

1 - hard reset, READY 0 - no reset due to History bit, READY -1 - no reset due to History bit but not READY OR reset but failed to come READY -2 - no reset, could not enter DIAG mode -3 - reset but bad FW bit

# mpt\_diag\_reset

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_diag_reset` — Perform hard reset of the adapter.

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_diag_reset (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int ignore, int  
sleepFlag);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*ignore*

Set if to honor and clear to ignore the reset history bit

*sleepFlag*

CAN\_SLEEP if called in a non-interrupt thread, else set to NO\_SLEEP (use `mdelay` instead)

### Description

This routine places the adapter in diagnostic mode via the WriteSequence register and then performs a hard reset of adapter via the Diagnostic register. Adapter should be in ready state upon successful completion.

## Returns

1 hard reset successful 0 no reset performed because reset history bit set -2 enabling diagnostic mode failed -3 diagnostic reset failed

# SendIocReset

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`SendIocReset` — Send IOCRreset request to MPT adapter.

## Synopsis

```
int SendIocReset (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8 reset_type, int
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*reset\_type*

reset type, expected values are MPI\_FUNCTION\_IOC\_MESSAGE\_UNIT\_RESET  
or MPI\_FUNCTION\_IO\_UNIT\_RESET

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

Send IOCReset request to the MPT adapter.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# initChainBuffers

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`initChainBuffers` — Allocate memory for and initialize chain buffers

## Synopsis

```
int initChainBuffers (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

## Description

Allocates memory for and initializes chain buffers, chain buffer control arrays and spinlock.

# PrimeIocFifos

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`PrimeIocFifos` — Initialize IOC request and reply FIFOs.

### Synopsis

```
int PrimeIocFifos (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to `MPT_ADAPTER` structure

### Description

This routine allocates memory for the MPT reply and request frame pools (if necessary), and primes the IOC reply FIFO with reply frames.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## mpt\_handshake\_req\_reply\_wait

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_handshake_req_reply_wait` — Send MPT request to and receive reply from IOC via doorbell handshake method.

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_handshake_req_reply_wait (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int
    reqBytes, u32 * req, int replyBytes, u16 * u16reply, int
    maxwait, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*reqBytes*

Size of the request in bytes

*req*

Pointer to MPT request frame

*replyBytes*

Expected size of the reply in bytes

*u16reply*

Pointer to area where reply should be written

*maxwait*

Max wait time for a reply (in seconds)

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## NOTES

It is the callers responsibility to byte-swap fields in the request which are greater than 1 byte in size. It is also the callers responsibility to byte-swap response fields which are greater than 1 byte in size.

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# WaitForDoorbellAck

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`WaitForDoorbellAck` — Wait for IOC doorbell handshake acknowledge

## Synopsis

```
int WaitForDoorbellAck (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int howlong, int
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*howlong*

How long to wait (in seconds)

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

This routine waits (up to ~2 seconds max) for IOC doorbell handshake ACKnowledge, indicated by the IOP\_DOORBELL\_STATUS bit in its IntStatus register being clear.

Returns a negative value on failure, else wait loop count.

# WaitForDoorbellInt

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`WaitForDoorbellInt` — Wait for IOC to set its doorbell interrupt bit

## Synopsis

```
int WaitForDoorbellInt (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int howlong, int  
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*howlong*

How long to wait (in seconds)

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep



## Description

This routine waits (up to ~2 seconds max) for IOC doorbell interrupt (MPI\_HIS\_DOORBELL\_INTERRUPT) to be set in the IntStatus register.

Returns a negative value on failure, else wait loop count.

# WaitForDoorbellReply

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`WaitForDoorbellReply` — Wait for and capture an IOC handshake reply.

## Synopsis

```
int WaitForDoorbellReply (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int howlong, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*howlong*

How long to wait (in seconds)

*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## Description

This routine polls the IOC for a handshake reply, 16 bits at a time. Reply is cached to IOC private area large enough to hold a maximum of 128 bytes of reply data.

Returns a negative value on failure, else size of reply in WORDS.

# GetLanConfigPages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

GetLanConfigPages — Fetch LANConfig pages.

## Synopsis

```
int GetLanConfigPages (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

## Return

0 for success -ENOMEM if no memory available -EPERM if not allowed due to ISR context -EAGAIN if no msg frames currently available -EFAULT for non-successful reply or no reply (timeout)

# GetIoUnitPage2

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

GetIoUnitPage2 — Retrieve BIOS version and boot order information.

### Synopsis

```
int GetIoUnitPage2 (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

### Returns

0 for success -ENOMEM if no memory available -EPERM if not allowed due to ISR context -EAGAIN if no msg frames currently available -EFAULT for non-successful reply or no reply (timeout)

## mpt\_GetScsiPortSettings

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_GetScsiPortSettings` — read SCSI Port Page 0 and 2

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_GetScsiPortSettings (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int portnum);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Strucutre

*portnum*

IOC port number

## Return

-EFAULT if read of config page header fails or if no nvram If read of SCSI Port Page 0 fails, NVRAM = MPT\_HOST\_NVRAM\_INVALID (0xFFFFFFFF)

## Adapter settings

async, narrow Return 1 If read of SCSI Port Page 2 fails, Adapter settings valid NVRAM = MPT\_HOST\_NVRAM\_INVALID (0xFFFFFFFF) Return 1 Else Both valid Return 0 CHECK - what type of locking mechanisms should be used???

# mpt\_readScsiDevicePageHeaders

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mpt_readScsiDevicePageHeaders` — save version and length of SDP1

### Synopsis

```
int mpt_readScsiDevicePageHeaders (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int
portnum);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to a Adapter Strucutre

*portnum*

IOC port number

### Return

-EFAULT if read of config page header fails or 0 if success.

# mpt\_inactive\_raid\_list\_free

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_inactive_raid_list_free` — This clears this link list.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_inactive_raid_list_free (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

pointer to per adapter structure

# mpt\_inactive\_raid\_volumes

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_inactive_raid_volumes` — sets up link list of `phy_disk_nums` for devices belonging in an inactive volume

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_inactive_raid_volumes (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8 channel,  
u8 id);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

pointer to per adapter structure

*channel*

volume channel

*id*

volume target id

## mpt\_sort\_ioc\_pg2

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_sort_ioc_pg2` — compare function for sorting volumes in ascending order

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_sort_ioc_pg2 (const void * a, const void * b);
```

## Arguments

*a*

`ioc_pg2` raid volume page

*b*

ioc\_pg2 raid volume page

## Return

0 same, 1 (a is bigger), -1 (b is bigger)

# SendEventNotification

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`SendEventNotification` — Send EventNotification (on or off) request to adapter

## Synopsis

```
int SendEventNotification (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8 EvSwitch, int  
sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*EvSwitch*

Event switch flags



*sleepFlag*

Specifies whether the process can sleep

## SendEventAck

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

SendEventAck — Send EventAck request to MPT adapter.

### Synopsis

```
int SendEventAck (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, EventNotificationReply_t  
* evnp);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*evnp*

Pointer to original EventNotification request

## mpt\_ioc\_reset

### LINUX

## Name

`mpt_ioc_reset` — Base cleanup for hard reset

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_ioc_reset (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int reset_phase);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to the adapter structure

*reset\_phase*

Indicates pre- or post-reset functionality

## Remark

Frees resources with internally generated commands.

# procmpt\_create

## LINUX

## Name

`procmpt_create` — Create `MPT_PROCFS_MPTBASEDIR` entries.

## Synopsis

```
int procmpt_create ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# procmpt\_destroy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`procmpt_destroy` — Tear down `MPT_PROCFS_MPTBASEDIR` entries.

## Synopsis

```
void procmpt_destroy ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# procmpt\_summary\_read

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`procmpt_summary_read` — Handle read request of a summary file

## Synopsis

```
int procmpt_summary_read (char * buf, char ** start, off_t  
offset, int request, int * eof, void * data);
```

## Arguments

*buf*

Pointer to area to write information

*start*

Pointer to start pointer

*offset*

Offset to start writing

*request*

Amount of read data requested

*eof*

Pointer to EOF integer

*data*

Pointer

## Description

Handles read request from `/proc/mpt/summary` or `/proc/mpt/iocN/summary`.  
Returns number of characters written to process performing the read.

# procmpt\_version\_read

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`procmpt_version_read` — Handle read request from `/proc/mpt/version`.

## Synopsis

```
int procmpt_version_read (char * buf, char ** start, off_t  
offset, int request, int * eof, void * data);
```

## Arguments

*buf*

Pointer to area to write information

*start*

Pointer to start pointer

*offset*

Offset to start writing

*request*

Amount of read data requested

*eof*

Pointer to EOF integer

*data*

Pointer

## Description

Returns number of characters written to process performing the read.

# procmpt\_iocinfo\_read

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`procmpt_iocinfo_read` — Handle read request from `/proc/mpt/iocN/info`.

## Synopsis

```
int procmpt_iocinfo_read (char * buf, char ** start, off_t  
offset, int request, int * eof, void * data);
```

## Arguments

*buf*

Pointer to area to write information

*start*

Pointer to start pointer

*offset*

Offset to start writing

*request*

Amount of read data requested

*eof*

Pointer to EOF integer

*data*

Pointer

## Description

Returns number of characters written to process performing the read.

## mpt\_SoftResetHandler

**LINUX**

## Name

`mpt_SoftResetHandler` — Issues a less expensive reset

## Synopsis

```
int mpt_SoftResetHandler (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int sleepFlag);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sleepFlag*

Indicates if sleep or schedule must be called.

## Description

Returns 0 for SUCCESS or -1 if FAILED.

Message Unit Reset - instructs the IOC to reset the Reply Post and Free FIFO's. All the Message Frames on Reply Free FIFO are discarded. All posted buffers are freed, and event notification is turned off. IOC doesn't reply to any outstanding request. This will transfer IOC to READY state.

## ProcessEventNotification

**LINUX**



## Name

`ProcessEventNotification` — Route `EventNotificationReply` to all event handlers

## Synopsis

```
int ProcessEventNotification (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
EventNotificationReply_t * pEventReply, int * evHandlers);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to `MPT_ADAPTER` structure

*pEventReply*

Pointer to `EventNotification` reply frame

*evHandlers*

Pointer to integer, number of event handlers

## Description

Routes a received `EventNotificationReply` to all currently registered event handlers. Returns sum of event handlers return values.

# mpt\_fc\_log\_info

**LINUX**

## Name

`mpt_fc_log_info` — Log information returned from Fibre Channel IOC.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_fc_log_info (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32 log_info);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*log\_info*

U32 LogInfo reply word from the IOC

## Description

Refer to `lsi/mpi_log_fc.h`.

# mpt\_spi\_log\_info

## LINUX

## Name

`mpt_spi_log_info` — Log information returned from SCSI Parallel IOC.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_spi_log_info (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32 log_info);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*log\_info*

U32 LogInfo word from the IOC

## Description

Refer to lsi/sp\_log.h.

## mpt\_sas\_log\_info

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_sas\_log\_info — Log information returned from SAS IOC.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_sas_log_info (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32 log_info, u8  
cb_idx);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*log\_info*

U32 LogInfo reply word from the IOC

*cb\_idx*

-- undescribed --

## Description

Refer to lsi/mpi\_log\_sas.h.

# mpt\_iocstatus\_info\_config

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mpt\_iocstatus\_info\_config — IOCSTATUS information for config pages

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_iocstatus_info_config (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32  
ioc_status, MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*ioc\_status*

U32 IOCStatus word from IOC

*mf*

Pointer to MPT request frame

## Description

Refer to lsi/mpi.h.

# mpt\_iocstatus\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mpt_iocstatus_info` — IOCSTATUS information returned from IOC.

## Synopsis

```
void mpt_iocstatus_info (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u32 ioc_status,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*ioc\_status*

U32 IOCStatus word from IOC

*mf*

Pointer to MPT request frame

## Description

Refer to lsi/mpi.h.

# fusion\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fusion_init` — Fusion MPT base driver initialization routine.

## Synopsis

```
int fusion_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# fusion\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fusion_exit` — Perform driver unload cleanup.

## Synopsis

```
void __exit fusion_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

This routine frees all resources associated with each MPT adapter and removes all `MPT_PROCFS_MPTBASEDIR` entries.

## mptscsih\_info

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptscsih_info` — Return information about MPT adapter

### Synopsis

```
const char * mptscsih_info (struct Scsi_Host * SHost);
```

### Arguments

*SHost*

Pointer to `Scsi_Host` structure

### Description

(linux `scsi_host_template.info` routine)

Returns pointer to buffer where information was written.



# mptscsih\_proc\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptscsih_proc_info` — Return information about MPT adapter

### Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_proc_info (struct Scsi_Host * host, char *
buffer, char ** start, off_t offset, int length, int func);
```

### Arguments

*host*

scsi host struct

*buffer*

if write, user data; if read, buffer for user

*start*

returns the buffer address

*offset*

if write, 0; if read, the current offset into the buffer from the previous read.

*length*

if write, return length;

*func*

write = 1; read = 0

## Description

(linux scsi\_host\_template.info routine)

# mptscsih\_qcmd

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_qcmd` — Primary Fusion MPT SCSI initiator IO start routine.

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_qcmd (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

## Arguments

*SCpnt*

Pointer to `scsi_cmnd` structure

## Description

(linux scsi\_host\_template.queuecommand routine) This is the primary SCSI IO start routine. Create a MPI SCSIIORequest from a linux `scsi_cmnd` request and send it to the IOC.

Returns 0. (rtn value discarded by linux scsi mid-layer)

# mptscsih\_IssueTaskMgmt

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptscsih_IssueTaskMgmt` — Generic send Task Management function.

### Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_IssueTaskMgmt (MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, u8 type, u8  
channel, u8 id, int lun, int ctx2abort, ulong timeout);
```

### Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to MPT SCSI\_HOST structure

*type*

Task Management type

*channel*

channel number for task management

*id*

Logical Target ID for reset (if appropriate)

*lun*

Logical Unit for reset (if appropriate)

*ctx2abort*

Context for the task to be aborted (if appropriate)

*timeout*

timeout for task management control

## Remark

`_HardResetHandler` can be invoked from an interrupt thread (timer) or a non-interrupt thread. In the former, must not call `schedule`.

Not all fields are meaningful for all task types.

Returns 0 for SUCCESS, or FAILED.

# mptscsih\_abort

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_abort` — Abort linux `scsi_cmnd` routine, `new_eh` variant

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_abort (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

## Arguments

*SCpnt*

Pointer to `scsi_cmnd` structure, IO to be aborted

## Description

(linux scsi\_host\_template.eh\_abort\_handler routine)

Returns SUCCESS or FAILED.

# mptscsih\_dev\_reset

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_dev_reset` — Perform a SCSI TARGET\_RESET! new\_eh variant

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_dev_reset (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

## Arguments

*SCpnt*

Pointer to `scsi_cmnd` structure, IO which reset is due to

## Description

(linux scsi\_host\_template.eh\_dev\_reset\_handler routine)

Returns SUCCESS or FAILED.

# mptscsih\_bus\_reset

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptscsih_bus_reset` — Perform a SCSI BUS\_RESET! new\_eh variant

### Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_bus_reset (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

### Arguments

*SCpnt*

Pointer to `scsi_cmnd` structure, IO which reset is due to

### Description

(linux `scsi_host_template.eh_bus_reset_handler` routine)

Returns SUCCESS or FAILED.

# mptscsih\_host\_reset

## LINUX

## Name

`mptscsih_host_reset` — Perform a SCSI host adapter RESET (new\_eh variant)

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_host_reset (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

## Arguments

*SCpnt*

Pointer to `scsi_cmnd` structure, IO which reset is due to

## Description

(linux `scsi_host_template.eh_host_reset_handler` routine)

Returns SUCCESS or FAILED.

# mptscsih\_taskmgmt\_complete

## LINUX

## Name

`mptscsih_taskmgmt_complete` — Registered with Fusion MPT base driver

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_taskmgmt_complete (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf, MPT_FRAME_HDR * mr);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*mf*

Pointer to SCSI task mgmt request frame

*mr*

Pointer to SCSI task mgmt reply frame

## Description

This routine is called from `mptbase.c::mpt_interrupt` at the completion of any SCSI task management request. This routine is registered with the MPT (base) driver at driver load/init time via the `mpt_register` API call.

Returns 1 indicating alloc'd request frame ptr should be freed.

## mptscsih\_is\_phys\_disk

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_is_phys_disk` —



## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_is_phys_disk (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, u8 channel, u8
id);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

-- undescrbed --

*channel*

-- undescrbed --

*id*

-- undescrbed --

## mptscsih\_get\_scsi\_lookup

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptscsih\_get\_scsi\_lookup —

## Synopsis

```
struct scsi_cmnd * mptscsih_get_scsi_lookup (MPT_ADAPTER *
ioc, int i);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*i*

index into the array

## Description

Returns the scsi\_cmd pointer

## Description

Returns the scsi\_cmd pointer

# mptscsih\_do\_cmd

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptscsih\_do\_cmd — Do internal command.

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_do_cmd (MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, INTERNAL_CMD * io);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

MPT\_SCSI\_HOST pointer

*io*

INTERNAL\_CMD pointer.

## Description

Issue the specified internally generated command and do command specific cleanup. For bus scan / DV only.

## NOTES

If command is Inquiry and status is good, initialize a target structure, save the data

## Remark

Single threaded access only.

## Return

< 0 if an illegal command or no resources

0 if good

> 0 if command complete but some type of completion error.

# mptscsih\_info\_scsiio

**LINUX**

## Name

`mptscsih_info_scsiio` — debug print info on reply frame

## Synopsis

```
void mptscsih_info_scsiio (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, struct scsi_cmnd  
* sc, SCSIIOReply_t * pScsiReply);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sc*

original scsi cmnd pointer

*pScsiReply*

Pointer to MPT reply frame

## Description

MPT\_DEBUG\_REPLY needs to be enabled to obtain this info

Refer to lsi/mpi.h.

## `_scsih_setup_eedp`

**LINUX**

## Name

`_scsih_setup_eedp` — setup MPI request for EEDP transfer

## Synopsis

```
int _scsih_setup_eedp (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, struct scsi_cmnd *  
scmd, SCSIIO32Request_t * mpi_request);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

-- undscribed --

*scmd*

pointer to scsi command object

*mpi\_request*

pointer to the SCSI\_IO request message frame

## Description

Supporting protection 1 only.

Returns nothing

## `_scsih_read_capacity_16`

**LINUX**

## Name

`_scsih_read_capacity_16` — send READ\_CAPACITY\_16 to target

## Synopsis

```
int _scsih_read_capacity_16 (MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, int id, int
channel, u32 lun, void * data, u32 length);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

-- undscribed --

*id*

-- undscribed --

*channel*

-- undscribed --

*lun*

-- undscribed --

*data*

-- undscribed --

*length*

-- undscribed --

## Description

# mptscsih\_getclear\_scsi\_lookup

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

mptscsih\_getclear\_scsi\_lookup —

### Synopsis

```
struct scsi_cmnd * mptscsih_getclear_scsi_lookup (MPT_ADAPTER
* ioc, int i);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*i*

index into the array

### Description

Returns the scsi\_cmd pointer

### Description

Returns the scsi\_cmd pointer

# mptscsih\_set\_scsi\_lookup

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptscsih_set_scsi_lookup` —

### Synopsis

```
void mptscsih_set_scsi_lookup (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int i,  
struct scsi_cmnd * scmd);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*i*

index into the array

*scmd*

scsi\_cmnd pointer

### Description

writes a scmd entry into the ScsiLookup[] array list



# SCPNT\_TO\_LOOKUP\_IDX

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

SCPNT\_TO\_LOOKUP\_IDX — searches for a given scmd in the ScsiLookup[] array list

### Synopsis

```
int SCPNT_TO_LOOKUP_IDX (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, struct scsi_cmnd *  
sc);
```

### Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*sc*

scsi\_cmnd pointer

# mptscsih\_get\_completion\_code

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

mptscsih\_get\_completion\_code —

## Synopsis

```
int mptscsih_get_completion_code (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * req, MPT_FRAME_HDR * reply);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*req*

-- undescribed --

*reply*

-- undescribed --

## mptscsih\_synchronize\_cache

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_synchronize_cache` — Send SYNCHRONIZE\_CACHE to all disks.

## Synopsis

```
void mptscsih_synchronize_cache (struct scsi_device * sdev,  
MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, VirtDevice * vdevice);
```

## Arguments

*sdev*

-- undescribed --

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI HOST structure

*vdevice*

virtual target device

## Description

Uses the ISR, but with special processing. MUST be single-threaded.

# mptscsih\_device\_sas\_address\_show

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_device_sas_address_show` — sas address *cdev* - pointer to embedded class device *buf* - the buffer returned

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t mptscsih_device_sas_address_show (struct device * dev,  
struct device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

-- undescribed --

*attr*

-- undescribed --

*buf*

-- undescribed --

## Description

This is the sas address for the target

A sysfs 'read-only' shost attribute.

# mptscsih\_device\_handle\_show

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_device_handle_show` — device handle *cdev* - pointer to embedded class device *buf* - the buffer returned

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t mptscsih_device_handle_show (struct device * dev,  
struct device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

```

dev
    -- undescribed --

attr
    -- undescribed --

buf
    -- undescribed --

```

## Description

This is the firmware assigned device handle

A sysfs 'read-only' shost attribute.

## mptscsih\_device\_fw\_id\_show

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptscsih_device_fw_id_show` — device handle `cdev` - pointer to embedded class device `buf` - the buffer returned

## Synopsis

```

ssize_t mptscsih_device_fw_id_show (struct device * dev,
struct device_attribute * attr, char * buf);

```

## Arguments

*dev*

-- undescribed --

*attr*

-- undescribed --

*buf*

-- undescribed --

## Description

This is the firmware assigned id.

A sysfs 'read-only' shost attribute.

# mptctl\_syscall\_down

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptctl_syscall_down` — Down the MPT adapter syscall semaphore.

## Synopsis

```
int mptctl_syscall_down (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int nonblock);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT adapter

*nonblock*

boolean, non-zero if O\_NONBLOCK is set

## Description

All of the ioctl commands can potentially sleep, which is illegal with a spinlock held, thus we perform mutual exclusion here.

Returns negative errno on error, or zero for success.

# mptspi\_setTargetNegoParms

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptspi\_setTargetNegoParms — Update the target negotiation parameters

## Synopsis

```
void mptspi_setTargetNegoParms (MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, VirtTarget  
* target, struct scsi_device * sdev);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI Host Structure

*target*

per target private data

*sdev*

SCSI device

## Description

Update the target negotiation parameters based on the the Inquiry data, adapter capabilities, and NVRAM settings.

# mptspi\_writeIOCPage4

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptspi\_writeIOCPage4 — write IOC Page 4

## Synopsis

```
int mptspi_writeIOCPage4 (MPT_SCSI_HOST * hd, u8 channel, u8  
id);
```



## Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI Host Structure

*channel*

channel number

*id*

write IOC Page4 for this ID & Bus

## Return

-EAGAIN if unable to obtain a Message Frame or 0 if success.

## Remark

We do not wait for a return, write pages sequentially.

# mptspi\_initTarget

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptspi\_initTarget — Target, LUN alloc/free functionality.

## Synopsis

```
void mptspi_initTarget (MPT SCSI_HOST * hd, VirtTarget *  
vtarget, struct scsi_device * sdev);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to MPT\_SCSI\_HOST structure

*vtarget*

per target private data

*sdev*

SCSI device

## NOTE

It's only SAFE to call this routine if data points to sane & valid STANDARD INQUIRY data!

Allocate and initialize memory for this target. Save inquiry data.

## mptspi\_is\_raid

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptspi_is_raid` — Determines whether target is belonging to volume

## Synopsis

```
int mptspi_is_raid (struct _MPT_SCSI_HOST * hd, u32 id);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI HOST structure

*id*

target device id

## Return

non-zero = true zero = false

# mptspi\_print\_write\_nego

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptspi_print_write_nego` — negotiation parameters debug info that is being sent

## Synopsis

```
void mptspi_print_write_nego (struct _MPT_SCSI_HOST * hd,  
struct scsi_target * starget, u32 ii);
```

## Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI HOST structure

*starget*

SCSI target

*ii*

negotiation parameters

## mptspi\_print\_read\_nego

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptspi_print_read_nego` — negotiation parameters debug info that is being read

### Synopsis

```
void mptspi_print_read_nego (struct _MPT_SCSI_HOST * hd,  
struct scsi_target * starget, u32 ii);
```

### Arguments

*hd*

Pointer to a SCSI HOST structure

*starget*

SCSI target

*ii*

negotiation parameters

# mptspi\_dv\_renegotiate\_work

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

### Name

mptspi\_dv\_renegotiate\_work —

### Synopsis

```
void mptspi_dv_renegotiate_work (struct work_struct * work);
```

### Arguments

*work*

-- undescribed --

# mptspi\_ioc\_reset

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

### Name

mptspi\_ioc\_reset —

## Synopsis

```
int mptspi_ioc_reset (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, int reset_phase);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

-- undescribed --

*reset\_phase*

-- undescribed --

## mptspi\_resume

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptspi\_resume —

## Synopsis

```
int mptspi_resume (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

-- undescribed --

# mptspi\_probe

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

mptspi\_probe — Installs scsi devices per bus.

## Synopsis

```
int mptspi_probe (struct pci_dev * pdev, const struct
pci_device_id * id);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to pci\_dev structure

*id*

-- undescribed --

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## mptspi\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptspi_init` — Register MPT adapter(s) as SCSI host(s) with SCSI mid-layer.

### Synopsis

```
int mptspi_init ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

## mptspi\_exit

### LINUX



## Name

`mptspi_exit` — Unregisters MPT adapter(s)

## Synopsis

```
void __exit mptspi_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

# mptfc\_set\_sdev\_queue\_depth

## LINUX

## Name

`mptfc_set_sdev_queue_depth` — global setting of the `mpt_sdev_queue_depth` found via `/sys/module/mptfc/parameters/mpt_sdev_queue_depth`

## Synopsis

```
int mptfc_set_sdev_queue_depth (const char * val, struct  
kernel_param * kp);
```

## Arguments

*val*  
-- undescribed --  
*kp*

## Description

Returns

## mptfc\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptfc_init` — Register MPT adapter(s) as SCSI host(s) with SCSI mid-layer.

## Synopsis

```
int mptfc_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Returns 0 for success, non-zero for failure.

# mptfc\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`mptfc_remove` — Remove fc infrastructure for devices

## Synopsis

```
void __devexit mptfc_remove (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

Pointer to `pci_dev` structure

# mptfc\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mptfc_exit` — Unregisters MPT adapter(s)

### Synopsis

```
void __exit mptfc_exit ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

# lan\_reply

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`lan_reply` — Handle all data sent from the hardware.

## Synopsis

```
int lan_reply (MPT_ADAPTER * ioc, MPT_FRAME_HDR * mf,  
MPT_FRAME_HDR * reply);
```

## Arguments

*ioc*

Pointer to MPT\_ADAPTER structure

*mf*

Pointer to original MPT request frame (NULL if TurboReply)

*reply*

Pointer to MPT reply frame

## Description

Returns 1 indicating original alloc'd request frame ptr should be freed, or 0 if it shouldn't.

## 4.2. I2O message devices

### i2o\_driver\_notify\_controller\_add

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_driver_notify_controller_add` — Send notification of added controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_driver_notify_controller_add (struct i2o_driver *  
drv, struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

I2O driver

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Send notification of added controller to a single registered driver.

# i2o\_driver\_notify\_controller\_remove

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_driver_notify_controller_remove` — Send notification of removed controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_driver_notify_controller_remove (struct i2o_driver *  
drv, struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

I2O driver

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Send notification of removed controller to a single registered driver.

# i2o\_driver\_notify\_device\_add

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_driver_notify_device_add` — Send notification of added device

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_driver_notify_device_add (struct i2o_driver * drv,  
struct i2o_device * i2o_dev);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

I2O driver

*i2o\_dev*

the added i2o\_device

## Description

Send notification of added device to a single registered driver.

# i2o\_driver\_notify\_device\_remove

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_driver_notify_device_remove` — Send notification of removed



device

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_driver_notify_device_remove (struct i2o_driver * drv,  
struct i2o_device * i2o_dev);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

I2O driver

*i2o\_dev*

the added i2o\_device

## Description

Send notification of removed device to a single registered driver.

# i2o\_msg\_out\_to\_virt

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_out_to_virt` — Turn an I2O message to a virtual address

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_message * i2o_msg_out_to_virt (struct  
i2o_controller * c, u32 m);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller

*m*

message engine value

## Description

Turn a receive message from an I2O controller bus address into a Linux virtual address. The shared page frame is a linear block so we simply have to shift the offset. This function does not work for sender side messages as they are ioremap objects provided by the I2O controller.

## i2o\_msg\_in\_to\_virt

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_in_to_virt` — Turn an I2O message to a virtual address

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_message __iomem * i2o_msg_in_to_virt (struct
i2o_controller * c, u32 m);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller

*m*

message engine value

## Description

Turn a send message from an I2O controller bus address into a Linux virtual address. The shared page frame is a linear block so we simply have to shift the offset. This function does not work for receive side messages as they are kmalloc objects in a different pool.

## i2o\_msg\_get

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_get` — obtain an I2O message from the IOP

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_message * i2o_msg_get (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

This function tries to get a message frame. If no message frame is available do not wait until one is available (see also `i2o_msg_get_wait`). The returned pointer to the message frame is not in I/O memory, it is allocated from a mempool. But because a MFA is allocated from the controller too it is guaranteed that `i2o_msg_post` will never fail.

On a success a pointer to the message frame is returned. If the message queue is empty -EBUSY is returned and if no memory is available -ENOMEM is returned.

## i2o\_msg\_post

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_post` — Post I2O message to I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_msg_post (struct i2o_controller * c, struct  
i2o_message * msg);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller to which the message should be send

*msg*

message returned by `i2o_msg_get`

## Description

Post the message to the I2O controller and return immediately.

# i2o\_msg\_post\_wait

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_post_wait` — Post and wait a message and wait until return

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_msg_post_wait (struct i2o_controller * c, struct  
i2o_message * msg, unsigned long timeout);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller

*msg*

message to post

*timeout*

time in seconds to wait

## Description

This API allows an OSM to post a message and then be told whether or not the system received a successful reply. If the message times out then the value '-ETIMEDOUT' is returned.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_msg\_nop\_mfa

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_nop_mfa` — Returns a fetched MFA back to the controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_msg_nop_mfa (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 mfa);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller from which the MFA was fetched

*mfa*

MFA which should be returned

## Description

This function must be used for preserved messages, because `i2o_msg_nop` also returns the allocated memory back to the `msg_pool` mempool.

# i2o\_msg\_nop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_msg_nop` — Returns a message which is not used

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_msg_nop (struct i2o_controller * c, struct  
i2o_message * msg);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller from which the message was created

*msg*

message which should be returned

## Description

If you fetch a message via `i2o_msg_get`, and can't use it, you must return the message with this function. Otherwise the MFA is lost as well as the allocated memory from the mempool.

# i2o\_flush\_reply

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_flush_reply` — Flush reply from I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_flush_reply (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 m);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller



*m*

the message identifier

## Description

The I2O controller must be informed that the reply message is not needed anymore. If you forget to flush the reply, the message frame can't be used by the controller anymore and is therefore lost.

# i2o\_iop\_free

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_free` — Free the `i2o_controller` struct

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_iop_free (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller to free

# i2o\_msg\_get\_wait

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_msg_get_wait` — obtain an I2O message from the IOP

### Synopsis

```
struct i2o_message * i2o_msg_get_wait (struct i2o_controller *  
c, int wait);
```

### Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

*wait*

how long to wait until timeout

### Description

This function waits up to *wait* seconds for a message slot to be available.

On a success the message is returned and the pointer to the message is set in `msg`. The returned message is the physical page frame offset address from the read port (see the i2o spec). If no message is available returns `I2O_QUEUE_EMPTY` and `msg` is leaved untouched.

# i2o\_cntxt\_list\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_cntxt_list_add` — Append a pointer to context list and return a id

### Synopsis

```
u32 i2o_cntxt_list_add (struct i2o_controller * c, void *  
ptr);
```

### Arguments

*c*  
controller to which the context list belong

*ptr*  
pointer to add to the context list

### Description

Because the context field in I2O is only 32-bit large, on 64-bit the pointer is too large to fit in the context field. The `i2o_cntxt_list` functions therefore map pointers to context fields.

Returns context id > 0 on success or 0 on failure.

# i2o\_cntxt\_list\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_cntxt_list_remove` — Remove a pointer from the context list

### Synopsis

```
u32 i2o_cntxt_list_remove (struct i2o_controller * c, void *  
ptr);
```

### Arguments

*c*

controller to which the context list belong

*ptr*

pointer which should be removed from the context list

### Description

Removes a previously added pointer from the context list and returns the matching context id.

Returns context id on success or 0 on failure.

# i2o\_cntxt\_list\_get

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_cntxt_list_get` — Get a pointer from the context list and remove it

### Synopsis

```
void * i2o_cntxt_list_get (struct i2o_controller * c, u32
context);
```

### Arguments

*c*  
controller to which the context list belong

*context*  
context id to which the pointer belong

### Description

Returns pointer to the matching context id on success or NULL on failure.

# i2o\_cntxt\_list\_get\_ptr

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_cntxt_list_get_ptr` — Get a context id from the context list

## Synopsis

```
u32 i2o_cntxt_list_get_ptr (struct i2o_controller * c, void *  
ptr);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller to which the context list belong

*ptr*

pointer to which the context id should be fetched

## Description

Returns context id which matches to the pointer on success or 0 on failure.

# i2o\_find\_iop

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_find_iop` — Find an I2O controller by id

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_controller * i2o_find_iop (int unit);
```

## Arguments

*unit*

unit number of the I2O controller to search for

## Description

Lookup the I2O controller on the controller list.

Returns pointer to the I2O controller on success or NULL if not found.

## i2o\_iop\_find\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_find_device` — Find a I2O device on an I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_device * i2o_iop_find_device (struct i2o_controller  
* c, ul6 tid);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller where the I2O device hangs on

*tid*

TID of the I2O device to search for

## Description

Searches the devices of the I2O controller for a device with TID *tid* and returns it.

Returns a pointer to the I2O device if found, otherwise NULL.

# i2o\_status\_get

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_status_get` — Get the status block from the I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_status_get (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller



## Description

Issue a status query on the controller. This updates the attached status block. The status block could then be accessed through `c->status_block`.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_event\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_event_register` — Turn on/off event notification for a I2O device

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_event_register (struct i2o_device * dev, struct  
i2o_driver * drv, int tcntxt, u32 evt_mask);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should receive the event registration request

*drv*

driver which want to get notified

*tcntxt*

transaction context to use with this notifier

`evt_mask`

mask of events

## Description

Create and posts an event registration message to the task. No reply is waited for, or expected. If you do not want further notifications, call the `i2o_event_register` again with a `evt_mask` of 0.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_iop\_quiesce

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_quiesce` — quiesce controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_quiesce (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`

controller

## Description

Quiesce an IOP. Causes IOP to make external operation quiescent (i2o 'READY' state). Internal operation of the IOP continues normally.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_iop\_enable

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_enable` — move controller from ready to OPERATIONAL

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_enable (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`

I2O controller

## Description

Enable IOP. This allows the IOP to resume external operations and reverses the effect of a quiesce. Returns zero or an error code if an error occurs.

# i2o\_iop\_quiesce\_all

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_iop_quiesce_all` — Quiesce all I2O controllers on the system

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_iop_quiesce_all ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Quiesce all I2O controllers which are connected to the system.

# i2o\_iop\_enable\_all

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_iop_enable_all` — Enables all controllers on the system

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_iop_enable_all ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Enables all I2O controllers which are connected to the system.

## i2o\_iop\_clear

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_clear` — Bring I2O controller into HOLD state

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_clear (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller

## Description

Clear an IOP to HOLD state, ie. terminate external operations, clear all input queues and prepare for a system restart. IOP's internal operation continues normally and the outbound queue is alive. The IOP is not expected to rebuild its LCT.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_iop\_init\_outbound\_queue

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_init_outbound_queue` — setup the outbound message queue

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_init_outbound_queue (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Clear and (re)initialize IOP's outbound queue and post the message frames to the IOP.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_iop\_reset

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_reset` — reset an I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_reset (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`  
controller to reset

## Description

Reset the IOP into INIT state and wait until IOP gets into RESET state. Terminate all external operations, clear IOP's inbound and outbound queues, terminate all DDMs, and reload the IOP's operating environment and all local DDMs. The IOP rebuilds its LCT.

## i2o\_iop\_activate

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_iop_activate` — Bring controller up to HOLD

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_activate (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

### Arguments

`c`  
controller

### Description

This function brings an I2O controller into HOLD state. The adapter is reset if necessary and then the queues and resource table are read.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_iop\_systab\_set

### LINUX



## Name

`i2o_iop_systab_set` — Set the I2O System Table of the specified IOP

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_systab_set (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`

I2O controller to which the system table should be send

## Description

Before the systab could be set `i2o_systab_build` must be called.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_iop\_online

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_iop_online` — Bring a controller online into OPERATIONAL state.

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_online (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Send the system table and enable the I2O controller.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_iop\_remove

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_remove` — Remove the I2O controller from the I2O core

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_iop_remove (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Remove the I2O controller from the I2O core. If devices are attached to the controller remove these also and finally reset the controller.

# i2o\_systab\_build

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_systab_build` — Build system table

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_systab_build ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

The system table contains information about all the IOPs in the system (duh) and is used by the Executives on the IOPs to establish peer2peer connections. We're not supporting peer2peer at the moment, but this will be needed down the road for things like lan2lan forwarding.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_parse\_hrt

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_parse_hrt` — Parse the hardware resource table.

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_parse_hrt (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

We don't do anything with it except dumping it (in debug mode).

Returns 0.

# i2o\_iop\_release

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_iop_release` — release the memory for a I2O controller

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_iop_release (struct device * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

I2O controller which should be released

### Description

Release the allocated memory. This function is called if refcount of device reaches 0 automatically.

# i2o\_iop\_alloc

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_iop_alloc` — Allocate and initialize a `i2o_controller` struct

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_controller * i2o_iop_alloc ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Allocate the necessary memory for a `i2o_controller` struct and initialize the lists and message mempool.

Returns a pointer to the I2O controller or a negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_iop\_add

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_iop_add` — Initialize the I2O controller and add him to the I2O core

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_add (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*  
controller

## Description

Initialize the I2O controller and if no error occurs add him to the I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_iop\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_init` — I2O main initialization function

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_iop_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Initialize the I2O drivers (OSM) functions, register the Executive OSM, initialize the I2O PCI part and finally initialize I2O device stuff.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_iop\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_iop_exit` — I2O main exit function

## Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_iop_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments



## Description

Removes I2O controllers from PCI subsystem and shut down OSMs.

# i2o\_config\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_config_init` — Configuration OSM initialization function

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_config_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Registers Configuration OSM in the I2O core and if old `ioctl`'s are compiled in initialize them.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_config\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_config_exit` — Configuration OSM exit function

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_config_exit ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

If old `ioctl`'s are compiled in exit remove them and unregisters Configuration OSM from I2O core.

# i2o\_msg\_post\_wait\_mem

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_msg_post_wait_mem` — Post and wait a message with DMA buffers

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_msg_post_wait_mem (struct i2o_controller * c, struct
i2o_message * msg, unsigned long timeout, struct i2o_dma *
dma);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller

*msg*

message to post

*timeout*

time in seconds to wait

*dma*

i2o\_dma struct of the DMA buffer to free on failure

## Description

This API allows an OSM to post a message and then be told whether or not the system received a successful reply. If the message times out then the value '-ETIMEDOUT' is returned. This is a special case. In this situation the message may (should) complete at an indefinite time in the future. When it completes it will use the memory buffer attached to the request. If -ETIMEDOUT is returned then the memory buffer must not be freed. Instead the event completion will free them for you. In all other cases the buffer are your problem.

Returns 0 on success, negative error code on timeout or positive error code from reply.

## **i2o\_exec\_lct\_get**

### **LINUX**

*Kernel Hackers Manual* June 2017

### **Name**

`i2o_exec_lct_get` — Get the IOP's Logical Configuration Table

### **Synopsis**

```
int i2o_exec_lct_get (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

### **Arguments**

*c*

I2O controller from which the LCT should be fetched

### **Description**

Send a LCT NOTIFY request to the controller, and wait I2O\_TIMEOUT\_LCT\_GET seconds until arrival of response. If the LCT is too large, retry it.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_exec\_wait\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_exec_wait_alloc` — Allocate a `i2o_exec_wait` struct and initialize it

### Synopsis

```
struct i2o_exec_wait * i2o_exec_wait_alloc ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Allocate the `i2o_exec_wait` struct and initialize the wait.

Returns `i2o_exec_wait` pointer on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_exec\_wait\_free

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_exec_wait_free` — Free an `i2o_exec_wait` struct

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_exec_wait_free (struct i2o_exec_wait * wait);
```

## Arguments

*wait*

I2O wait data which should be cleaned up

# i2o\_msg\_post\_wait\_complete

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_msg_post_wait_complete` — Reply to a `i2o_msg_post` request from IOP

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_msg_post_wait_complete (struct i2o_controller * c, u32  
m, struct i2o_message * msg, u32 context);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller which answers

*m*

message id

*msg*

pointer to the I2O reply message

*context*

transaction context of request

## Description

This function is called in interrupt context only. If the reply reached before the timeout, the `i2o_exec_wait` struct is filled with the message and the task will be waked up. The task is now responsible for returning the message `m` back to the controller! If the message reaches us after the timeout clean up the `i2o_exec_wait` struct (including allocated DMA buffer).

Return 0 on success and if the message `m` should not be given back to the I2O controller, or `>0` on success and if the message should be given back afterwards. Returns negative error code on failure. In this case the message must also be given back to the controller.

## i2o\_exec\_show\_vendor\_id

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_exec_show_vendor_id` — Displays Vendor ID of controller

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t i2o_exec_show_vendor_id (struct device * d, struct
device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

*d*

device of which the Vendor ID should be displayed

*attr*

device\_attribute to display

*buf*

buffer into which the Vendor ID should be printed

## Description

Returns number of bytes printed into buffer.

## i2o\_exec\_show\_product\_id

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

i2o\_exec\_show\_product\_id — Displays Product ID of controller



## Synopsis

```
ssize_t i2o_exec_show_product_id (struct device * d, struct
device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

*d*

device of which the Product ID should be displayed

*attr*

device\_attribute to display

*buf*

buffer into which the Product ID should be printed

## Description

Returns number of bytes printed into buffer.

## i2o\_exec\_probe

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

i2o\_exec\_probe — Called if a new I2O device (executive class) appears

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_exec_probe (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should be probed

## Description

Registers event notification for every event from Executive device. The return is always 0, because we want all devices of class Executive.

Returns 0 on success.

## i2o\_exec\_remove

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_exec_remove` — Called on I2O device removal

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_exec_remove (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which was removed

## Description

Unregisters event notification from Executive I2O device.

Returns 0 on success.

# i2o\_exec\_lct\_notify

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_exec_lct_notify` — Send a asynchronous LCT NOTIFY request

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_exec_lct_notify (struct i2o_controller * c, u32  
change_ind);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller to which the request should be send

*change\_ind*

change indicator

## Description

This function sends a LCT NOTIFY request to the I2O controller with the change indicator *change\_ind*. If the *change\_ind* == 0 the controller replies immediately after the request. If *change\_ind* > 0 the reply is send after change indicator of the LCT is > *change\_ind*.

# i2o\_exec\_lct\_modified

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

## Name

*i2o\_exec\_lct\_modified* — Called on LCT NOTIFY reply

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_exec_lct_modified (struct work_struct * _work);
```

## Arguments

*\_work*

work struct for a specific controller

## Description

This function handles asynchronous LCT NOTIFY replies. It parses the new LCT and if the buffer for the LCT was too small sends a LCT NOTIFY again, otherwise send LCT NOTIFY to get informed on next LCT change.

## i2o\_exec\_reply

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_exec_reply` — I2O Executive reply handler

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_exec_reply (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 m, struct
i2o_message * msg);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller from which the reply comes

*m*

message id

*msg*

pointer to the I2O reply message

## Description

This function is always called from interrupt context. If a POST WAIT reply was received, pass it to the complete function. If a LCT NOTIFY reply was received, a new event is created to handle the update.

Returns 0 on success and if the reply should not be flushed or > 0 on success and if the reply should be flushed. Returns negative error code on failure and if the reply should be flushed.

## i2o\_exec\_event

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_exec_event` — Event handling function

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_exec_event (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

Work item in occurring event

## Description

Handles events send by the Executive device. At the moment does not do anything useful.

# i2o\_exec\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_exec_init` — Registers the Exec OSM

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_exec_init ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Registers the Exec OSM in the I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_exec\_exit

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_exec_exit` — Removes the Exec OSM

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_exec_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Unregisters the Exec OSM from the I2O core.

# i2o\_bus\_scan

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_bus_scan` — Scan the bus for new devices



## Synopsis

```
int i2o_bus_scan (struct i2o_device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device of the bus, which should be scanned

## Description

Scans the bus dev for new / removed devices. After the scan a new LCT will be fetched automatically.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_bus\_store\_scan

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_bus_store_scan` — Scan the I2O Bus Adapter

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t i2o_bus_store_scan (struct device * d, struct  
device_attribute * attr, const char * buf, size_t count);
```

## Arguments

<i>d</i>	device which should be scanned
<i>attr</i>	device_attribute
<i>buf</i>	output buffer
<i>count</i>	buffer size

## Description

Returns count.

# i2o\_bus\_probe

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

## Name

`i2o_bus_probe` — verify if dev is a I2O Bus Adapter device and install it

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_bus_probe (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to verify if it is a I2O Bus Adapter device

## Description

Because we want all Bus Adapters always return 0. Except when we fail. Then we are sad.

Returns 0, except when we fail to excel.

# i2o\_bus\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_bus_remove` — remove the I2O Bus Adapter device from the system again

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_bus_remove (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O Bus Adapter device which should be removed

## Description

Always returns 0.

# i2o\_bus\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_bus_init` — Bus Adapter OSM initialization function

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_bus_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Only register the Bus Adapter OSM in the I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_bus\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_bus_exit` — Bus Adapter OSM exit function

### Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_bus_exit ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Unregisters Bus Adapter OSM from I2O core.

# i2o\_device\_claim

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_device_claim` — claim a device for use by an OSM

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_device_claim (struct i2o_device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device to claim

## Description

Do the leg work to assign a device to a given OSM. If the claim succeeds, the owner is the primary. If the attempt fails a negative errno code is returned. On success zero is returned.

# i2o\_device\_claim\_release

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_claim_release` — release a device that the OSM is using

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_device_claim_release (struct i2o_device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to release

## Description

Drop a claim by an OSM on a given I2O device.

AC - some devices seem to want to refuse an unclaim until they have finished internal processing. It makes sense since you don't want a new device to go reconfiguring the entire system until you are done. Thus we are prepared to wait briefly.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_device\_issue\_claim

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_issue_claim` — claim or release a device

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_device_issue_claim (struct i2o_device * dev, u32 cmd,  
u32 type);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device to claim or release

*cmd*

claim or release command

*type*

type of claim

## Description

Issue I2O UTIL\_CLAIM or UTIL\_RELEASE messages. The message to be sent is set by *cmd*. *dev* is the I2O device which should be claim or released and the *type* is the claim type (see the I2O spec).

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_device\_release

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_release` — release the memory for a I2O device

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_device_release (struct device * dev);
```



## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should be released

## Description

Release the allocated memory. This function is called if refcount of device reaches 0 automatically.

# i2o\_device\_show\_class\_id

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_show_class_id` — Displays class id of I2O device

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t i2o_device_show_class_id (struct device * dev, struct  
device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device of which the class id should be displayed

*attr*

pointer to device attribute

*buf*

buffer into which the class id should be printed

## Description

Returns the number of bytes which are printed into the buffer.

# i2o\_device\_show\_tid

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_show_tid` — Displays TID of I2O device

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t i2o_device_show_tid (struct device * dev, struct
device_attribute * attr, char * buf);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device of which the TID should be displayed

*attr*

pointer to device attribute

*buf*

buffer into which the TID should be printed

## Description

Returns the number of bytes which are printed into the buffer.

# i2o\_device\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_device_alloc` — Allocate a I2O device and initialize it

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_device * i2o_device_alloc ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Allocate the memory for a I2O device and initialize locks and lists

Returns the allocated I2O device or a negative error code if the device could not be allocated.

# i2o\_device\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_device_add` — allocate a new I2O device and add it to the IOP

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_device_add (struct i2o_controller * c, i2o_lct_entry *  
entry);
```

### Arguments

*c*

I2O controller that the device is on

*entry*

LCT entry of the I2O device

### Description

Allocate a new I2O device and initialize it with the LCT entry. The device is appended to the device list of the controller.

Returns zero on success, or a -ve errno.

# i2o\_device\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_device_remove` — remove an I2O device from the I2O core

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_device_remove (struct i2o_device * i2o_dev);
```

### Arguments

*i2o\_dev*

I2O device which should be released

### Description

Is used on I2O controller removal or LCT modification, when the device is removed from the system. Note that the device could still hang around until the refcount reaches 0.

# i2o\_device\_parse\_lct

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_device_parse_lct` — Parse a previously fetched LCT and create devices

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_device_parse_lct (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`

I2O controller from which the LCT should be parsed.

## Description

The Logical Configuration Table tells us what we can talk to on the board. For every entry we create an I2O device, which is registered in the I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_bus\_match

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_bus_match` — Tell if I2O device class id matches the class ids of the I2O driver (OSM)

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_bus_match (struct device * dev, struct device_driver *  
drv);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device which should be verified

*drv*

the driver to match against

## Description

Used by the bus to check if the driver wants to handle the device.

Returns 1 if the class ids of the driver match the class id of the device, otherwise 0.

# i2o\_driver\_dispatch

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_driver_dispatch` — dispatch an I2O reply message

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_driver_dispatch (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 m);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller of the message

*m*

I2O message number

## Description

The reply is delivered to the driver from which the original message was. This function is only called from interrupt context.

Returns 0 on success and the message should not be flushed. Returns > 0 on success and if the message should be flushed afterwards. Returns negative error code on failure (the message will be flushed too).

## i2o\_driver\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_driver_init` — initialize I2O drivers (OSMs)

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_driver_init ( void );
```



## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Registers the I2O bus and allocate memory for the array of OSMs.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_driver\_exit

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_driver_exit` — clean up I2O drivers (OSMs)

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_driver_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Unregisters the I2O bus and frees driver array.

## i2o\_pci\_free

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_pci_free` — Frees the DMA memory for the I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_pci_free (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

`c`

I2O controller to free

## Description

Remove all allocated DMA memory and unmap memory IO regions. If MTRR is enabled, also remove it again.

# i2o\_pci\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_pci_alloc` — Allocate DMA memory, map IO memory for I2O controller

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_pci_alloc (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

### Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

### Description

Allocate DMA memory for a PCI (or in theory AGP) I2O controller. All IO mappings are also done here. If MTRR is enabled, also do add memory regions here.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_pci\_interrupt

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_pci_interrupt` — Interrupt handler for I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
irqreturn_t i2o_pci_interrupt (int irq, void * dev_id);
```

## Arguments

*irq*

interrupt line

*dev\_id*

pointer to the I2O controller

## Description

Handle an interrupt from a PCI based I2O controller. This turns out to be rather simple. We keep the controller pointer in the cookie.

# i2o\_pci\_irq\_enable

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_pci_irq_enable` — Allocate interrupt for I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_pci_irq_enable (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

i2o\_controller that the request is for

## Description

Allocate an interrupt for the I2O controller, and activate interrupts on the I2O controller.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_pci\_irq\_disable

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

i2o\_pci\_irq\_disable — Free interrupt for I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_pci_irq_disable (struct i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller

## Description

Disable interrupts in I2O controller and then free interrupt.

## i2o\_pci\_probe

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_pci_probe` — Probe the PCI device for an I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_pci_probe (struct pci_dev * pdev, const struct  
pci_device_id * id);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

PCI device to test

*id*

id which matched with the PCI device id table

## Description

Probe the PCI device for any device which is a member of the Intelligent, I2O class or an Adaptec Zero Channel Controller. We attempt to set up each such device and register it with the core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_pci\_remove

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_pci_remove` — Removes a I2O controller from the system

## Synopsis

```
void __devexit i2o_pci_remove (struct pci_dev * pdev);
```

## Arguments

*pdev*

I2O controller which should be removed

## Description

Reset the I2O controller, disable interrupts and remove all allocated resources.

## i2o\_pci\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`i2o_pci_init` — registers I2O PCI driver in PCI subsystem

#### Synopsis

```
int i2o_pci_init ( void );
```

#### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

#### Description

Returns > 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_pci\_exit

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`i2o_pci_exit` — unregisters I2O PCI driver from PCI subsystem



## Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_pci_exit ( void);
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## i2o\_block\_device\_free

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_device_free` — free the memory of the I2O Block device

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_device_free (struct i2o_block_device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O Block device, which should be cleaned up

## Description

Frees the request queue, gendisk and the `i2o_block_device` structure.

# i2o\_block\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_remove` — remove the I2O Block device from the system again

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_remove (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O Block device which should be removed

## Description

Remove gendisk from system and free all allocated memory.

Always returns 0.

# i2o\_block\_device\_flush

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_device_flush` — Flush all dirty data of I2O device `dev`

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_device_flush (struct i2o_device * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should be flushed

### Description

Flushes all dirty data on device `dev`.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_device\_mount

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_block_device_mount` — Mount (load) the media of device `dev`

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_device_mount (struct i2o_device * dev, u32
media_id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should receive the mount request

*media\_id*

Media Identifier

## Description

Load a media into drive. Identifier should be set to -1, because the spec does not support any other value.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## `i2o_block_device_lock`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_block_device_lock` — Locks the media of device `dev`

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_device_lock (struct i2o_device * dev, u32  
media_id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should receive the lock request

*media\_id*

Media Identifier

## Description

Lock media of device `dev` to prevent removal. The media identifier should be set to -1, because the spec does not support any other value.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## `i2o_block_device_unlock`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_block_device_unlock` — Unlocks the media of device `dev`

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_device_unlock (struct i2o_device * dev, u32
media_id);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should receive the unlocked request

*media\_id*

Media Identifier

## Description

Unlocks the media in device `dev`. The media identifier should be set to -1, because the spec does not support any other value.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## `i2o_block_device_power`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_block_device_power` — Power management for device `dev`

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_device_power (struct i2o_block_device * dev, u8
op);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

I2O device which should receive the power management request

*op*

Operation to send

## Description

Send a power management request to the device `dev`.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## `i2o_block_request_alloc`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2o_block_request_alloc` — Allocate an I2O block request struct

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_block_request * i2o_block_request_alloc ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Allocates an I2O block request struct and initialize the list.

Returns a `i2o_block_request` pointer on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_request\_free

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_block_request_free` — Frees a I2O block request



## Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_request_free (struct i2o_block_request * ireq);
```

## Arguments

*ireq*

I2O block request which should be freed

## Description

Frees the allocated memory (give it back to the request mempool).

## i2o\_block\_sglist\_alloc

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_sglist_alloc` — Allocate the SG list and map it

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_sglist_alloc (struct i2o_controller * c, struct  
i2o_block_request * ireq, u32 ** mptr);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller to which the request belongs

*ireq*

I2O block request

*mptr*

message body pointer

## Description

Builds the SG list and map it to be accessible by the controller.

Returns 0 on failure or 1 on success.

# i2o\_block\_sglist\_free

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_sglist_free` — Frees the SG list

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_sglist_free (struct i2o_block_request * ireq);
```

## Arguments

*ireq*

I2O block request from which the SG should be freed

## Description

Frees the SG list from the I2O block request.

# i2o\_block\_prep\_req\_fn

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_prep_req_fn` — Allocates I2O block device specific struct

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_prep_req_fn (struct request_queue * q, struct  
request * req);
```

## Arguments

*q*

request queue for the request

*req*

the request to prepare

## Description

Allocate the necessary `i2o_block_request` struct and connect it to the request. This is needed that we not lose the SG list later on.

Returns `BLKPREP_OK` on success or `BLKPREP_DEFER` on failure.

## `i2o_block_delayed_request_fn`

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_delayed_request_fn` — delayed request queue function

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_delayed_request_fn (struct work_struct * work);
```

## Arguments

*work*

the delayed request with the queue to start

## Description

If the request queue is stopped for a disk, and there is no open request, a new event is created, which calls this function to start the queue after

`I2O_BLOCK_REQUEST_TIME`. Otherwise the queue will never be started again.

# i2o\_block\_end\_request

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_end_request` — Post-processing of completed commands

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_end_request (struct request * req, int error,  
int nr_bytes);
```

### Arguments

*req*

request which should be completed

*error*

0 for success, < 0 for error

*nr\_bytes*

number of bytes to complete

### Description

Mark the request as complete. The lock must not be held when entering.

# i2o\_block\_reply

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_reply` — Block OSM reply handler.

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_reply (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 m, struct  
i2o_message * msg);
```

### Arguments

*c*

I2O controller from which the message arrives

*m*

message id of reply

*msg*

the actual I2O message reply

### Description

This function gets all the message replies.

# i2o\_block\_open

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_open` — Open the block device

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_open (struct block_device * bdev, fmode_t mode);
```

### Arguments

*bdev*

block device being opened

*mode*

file open mode

### Description

Power up the device, mount and lock the media. This function is called, if the block device is opened for access.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_release

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_block_release` — Release the I2O block device

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_release (struct gendisk * disk, fmode_t mode);
```

## Arguments

*disk*

gendisk device being released

*mode*

file open mode

## Description

Unlock and unmount the media, and power down the device. Gets called if the block device is closed.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## `i2o_block_ioctl`

**LINUX**



## Name

`i2o_block_ioctl` — Issue device specific ioctl calls.

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_ioctl (struct block_device * bdev, fmode_t mode,  
unsigned int cmd, unsigned long arg);
```

## Arguments

*bdev*

block device being opened

*mode*

file open mode

*cmd*

ioctl command

*arg*

arg

## Description

Handles ioctl request for the block device.

Return 0 on success or negative error on failure.

# i2o\_block\_check\_events

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_check_events` — Have we seen a media change?

### Synopsis

```
unsigned int i2o_block_check_events (struct gendisk * disk,
unsigned int clearing);
```

### Arguments

*disk*

gendisk which should be verified

*clearing*

events being cleared

### Description

Verifies if the media has changed.

Returns 1 if the media was changed or 0 otherwise.

# i2o\_block\_transfer

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_block_transfer` — Transfer a request to/from the I2O controller

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_transfer (struct request * req);
```

## Arguments

*req*

the request which should be transferred

## Description

This function converts the request into a I2O message. The necessary DMA buffers are allocated and after everything is setup post the message to the I2O controller. No cleanup is done by this function. It is done on the interrupt side when the reply arrives.

Return 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_request\_fn

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_block_request_fn` — request queue handling function

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_block_request_fn (struct request_queue * q);
```

## Arguments

*q*

request queue from which the request could be fetched

## Description

Takes the next request from the queue, transfers it and if no error occurs dequeue it from the queue. On arrival of the reply the message will be processed further. If an error occurs requeue the request.

# i2o\_block\_device\_alloc

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_device_alloc` — Allocate memory for a I2O Block device

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_block_device * i2o_block_device_alloc ( void);
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Allocate memory for the `i2o_block_device` struct, gendisk and request queue and initialize them as far as no additional information is needed.

Returns a pointer to the allocated I2O Block device on success or a negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_probe

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_block_probe` — verify if dev is a I2O Block device and install it

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_probe (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to verify if it is a I2O Block device

## Description

We only verify if the `user_tid` of the device is `0xfff` and then install the device. Otherwise it is used by some other device (e. g. RAID).

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_block\_init

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_block_init` — Block OSM initialization function

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_block_init ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Allocate the slab and mempool for request structs, registers `i2o_block` block device and finally register the Block OSM in the I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_block\_exit

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

i2o\_block\_exit — Block OSM exit function

### Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_block_exit ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Unregisters Block OSM from I2O core, unregisters i2o\_block block device and frees the mempool and slab.

# i2o\_scsi\_get\_host

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_scsi_get_host` — Get an I2O SCSI host

## Synopsis

```
struct i2o_scsi_host * i2o_scsi_get_host (struct  
i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*c*

I2O controller to for which to get the SCSI host

## Description

If the I2O controller already exists as SCSI host, the SCSI host is returned, otherwise the I2O controller is added to the SCSI core.

Returns pointer to the I2O SCSI host on success or NULL on failure.

# i2o\_scsi\_remove

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_scsi_remove` — Remove I2O device from SCSI core



## Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_remove (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device which should be removed

## Description

Removes the I2O device from the SCSI core again.

Returns 0 on success.

## i2o\_scsi\_probe

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_scsi_probe` — verify if dev is a I2O SCSI device and install it

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_probe (struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to verify if it is a I2O SCSI device

## Description

Retrieve channel, id and lun for I2O device. If everything goes well register the I2O device as SCSI device on the I2O SCSI controller.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_scsi\_reply

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_scsi_reply` — SCSI OSM message reply handler

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_reply (struct i2o_controller * c, u32 m, struct  
i2o_message * msg);
```

## Arguments

*c*

controller issuing the reply

*m*

message id for flushing

*msg*

the message from the controller

## Description

Process reply messages (interrupts in normal scsi controller think). We can get a variety of messages to process. The normal path is scsi command completions. We must also deal with IOP failures, the reply to a bus reset and the reply to a LUN query.

Returns 0 on success and if the reply should not be flushed or > 0 on success and if the reply should be flushed. Returns negative error code on failure and if the reply should be flushed.

## i2o\_scsi\_notify\_device\_add

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_scsi_notify_device_add` — Retrieve notifications of added devices

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_scsi_notify_device_add (struct i2o_device * i2o_dev);
```

## Arguments

*i2o\_dev*

the I2O device which was added

## Description

If a I2O device is added we catch the notification, because I2O classes other than SCSI peripheral will not be received through `i2o_scsi_probe`.

# i2o\_scsi\_notify\_device\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_scsi_notify_device_remove` — Retrieve notifications of removed devices

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_scsi_notify_device_remove (struct i2o_device *  
i2o_dev);
```

## Arguments

*i2o\_dev*

the I2O device which was removed

## Description

If a I2O device is removed, we catch the notification to remove the corresponding SCSI device.

# i2o\_scsi\_notify\_controller\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_scsi_notify_controller_add` — Retrieve notifications of added controllers

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_scsi_notify_controller_add (struct i2o_controller *  
c);
```

## Arguments

`c`  
the controller which was added

## Description

If a I2O controller is added, we catch the notification to add a corresponding Scsi\_Host.

# i2o\_scsi\_notify\_controller\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_scsi_notify_controller_remove` — Retrieve notifications of removed controllers

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_scsi_notify_controller_remove (struct i2o_controller  
* c);
```

### Arguments

*c*

the controller which was removed

### Description

If a I2O controller is removed, we catch the notification to remove the corresponding Scsi\_Host.

# i2o\_scsi\_queuecommand\_lck

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_scsi_queuecommand_lck` — queue a SCSI command

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_queuecommand_lck (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt, void  
(*done) (struct scsi_cmnd *));
```

## Arguments

*SCpnt*

scsi command pointer

*done*

callback for completion

## Description

Issue a scsi command asynchronously. Return 0 on success or 1 if we hit an error (normally message queue congestion). The only minor complication here is that I2O deals with the device addressing so we have to map the bus/dev/lun back to an I2O handle as well as faking absent devices ourself.

## Locks

takes the controller lock on error path only

# i2o\_scsi\_abort

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_scsi_abort` — abort a running command

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_abort (struct scsi_cmnd * SCpnt);
```

### Arguments

*SCpnt*

command to abort

### Description

Ask the I2O controller to abort a command. This is an asynchronous process and our callback handler will see the command complete with an aborted message if it succeeds.

Returns 0 if the command is successfully aborted or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_scsi\_bios\_param

## LINUX



## Name

`i2o_scsi_bios_param` — Invent disk geometry

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_bios_param (struct scsi_device * sdev, struct  
block_device * dev, sector_t capacity, int * ip);
```

## Arguments

*sdev*

scsi device

*dev*

block layer device

*capacity*

size in sectors

*ip*

geometry array

## Description

This is anyone's guess quite frankly. We use the same rules everyone else appears to and hope. It seems to work.

# i2o\_scsi\_init

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_scsi_init` — SCSI OSM initialization function

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_scsi_init ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Register SCSI OSM into I2O core.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_scsi\_exit

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_scsi_exit` — SCSI OSM exit function

## Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_scsi_exit ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Unregisters SCSI OSM from I2O core.

# i2o\_get\_class\_name

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_get_class_name` — do i2o class name lookup

## Synopsis

```
const char * i2o_get_class_name (int class);
```

## Arguments

*class*

class number

## Description

Return a descriptive string for an i2o class.

# i2o\_proc\_create\_entries

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_proc_create_entries` — Creates proc dir entries

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_proc_create_entries (struct proc_dir_entry * dir,  
i2o_proc_entry * i2o_pe, void * data);
```

## Arguments

*dir*

proc dir entry under which the entries should be placed

*i2o\_pe*

pointer to the entries which should be added

*data*

pointer to I2O controller or device

## Description

Create proc dir entries for a I2O controller or I2O device.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_proc\_subdir\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_proc_subdir_remove` — Remove child entries from a proc entry

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_proc_subdir_remove (struct proc_dir_entry * dir);
```

## Arguments

*dir*

proc dir entry from which the childs should be removed

## Description

Iterate over each i2o proc entry under *dir* and remove it. If the child also has entries, remove them too.

# i2o\_proc\_device\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_proc_device_add` — Add an I2O device to the proc dir

## Synopsis

```
void i2o_proc_device_add (struct proc_dir_entry * dir, struct  
i2o_device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dir*

proc dir entry to which the device should be added

*dev*

I2O device which should be added

## Description

Add an I2O device to the proc dir entry `dir` and create the entries for the device depending on the class of the I2O device.

# i2o\_proc\_iop\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_proc_iop_add` — Add an I2O controller to the i2o proc tree

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_proc_iop_add (struct proc_dir_entry * dir, struct
i2o_controller * c);
```

## Arguments

*dir*

parent proc dir entry

*c*

I2O controller which should be added

## Description

Add the entries to the parent proc dir entry. Also each device is added to the controllers proc dir entry.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_proc\_iop\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_proc_iop_remove` — Removes an I2O controller from the i2o proc tree

### Synopsis

```
void i2o_proc_iop_remove (struct proc_dir_entry * dir, struct  
i2o_controller * c);
```

### Arguments

*dir*

parent proc dir entry

*c*

I2O controller which should be removed

### Description

Iterate over each i2o proc entry and search controller *c*. If it is found remove it from the tree.



# i2o\_proc\_fs\_create

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2o_proc_fs_create` — Create the i2o proc fs.

### Synopsis

```
int i2o_proc_fs_create ( void );
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

Iterate over each I2O controller and create the entries for it.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_proc\_fs\_destroy

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_proc_fs_destroy` — Cleanup the all i2o proc entries

## Synopsis

```
int __exit i2o_proc_fs_destroy ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Iterate over each I2O controller and remove the entries for it.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

# i2o\_proc\_init

## LINUX

## Name

`i2o_proc_init` — Init function for procfs

## Synopsis

```
int i2o_proc_init ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Registers Proc OSM and creates procfs entries.

Returns 0 on success or negative error code on failure.

## i2o\_proc\_exit

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2o_proc_exit` — Exit function for procfs

## Synopsis

```
void __exit i2o_proc_exit ( void );
```

## **Arguments**

*void*

no arguments

## **Description**

Unregisters Proc OSM and removes procfs entries.

# Chapter 5. Sound Devices

## snd\_register\_device

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_register\_device — Register the ALSA device file for the card

### Synopsis

```
int snd_register_device (int type, struct snd_card * card, int  
dev, const struct file_operations * f_ops, void *  
private_data, const char * name);
```

### Arguments

*type*

the device type, SNDRV\_DEVICE\_TYPE\_XXX

*card*

the card instance

*dev*

the device index

*f\_ops*

the file operations

*private\_data*

user pointer for f\_ops->open

*name*

the device file name

## Description

Registers an ALSA device file for the given card. The operators have to be set in `reg` parameter.

This function uses the card's device pointer to link to the correct struct device.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_printk

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_printk` — `printk` wrapper

## Synopsis

```
snd_printk ( fmt,  args... );
```

## Arguments

*fmt*

format string

*args...*

variable arguments

## Description

Works like `printk` but prints the file and the line of the caller when configured with `CONFIG_SND_VERBOSE_PRINTK`.

# snd\_printd

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_printd` — debug `printk`

## Synopsis

```
snd_printd ( fmt,  args... );
```

## Arguments

*fmt*

format string

*args...*

variable arguments

## Description

Works like `snd_printk` for debugging purposes. Ignored when `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG` is not set.

# snd\_BUG

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_BUG — give a BUG warning message and stack trace

### Synopsis

```
snd_BUG (void);
```

### Arguments

None

### Description

Calls `WARN` if `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG` is set. Ignored when `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG` is not set.

# snd\_BUG\_ON

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_BUG\_ON — debugging check macro



## Synopsis

```
snd_BUG_ON ( cond );
```

## Arguments

*cond*

condition to evaluate

## Description

When `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG` is set, this macro evaluates the given condition, and call `WARN` and returns the value if it's non-zero.

When `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG` is not set, this just returns zero, and the given condition is ignored.

## NOTE

the argument won't be evaluated at all when `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG=n`. Thus, don't put any statement that influences on the code behavior, such as pre/post increment, to the argument of this macro. If you want to evaluate and give a warning, use standard `WARN_ON`.

## snd\_printdd

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_printdd` — debug printk

## Synopsis

```
snd_printdd ( format,  args... );
```

## Arguments

*format*

format string

*args...*

variable arguments

## Description

Works like `snd_printk` for debugging purposes. Ignored when `CONFIG_SND_DEBUG_VERBOSE` is not set.

# register\_sound\_special\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`register_sound_special_device` — register a special sound node

## Synopsis

```
int register_sound_special_device (const struct  
file_operations * fops, int unit, struct device * dev);
```

## Arguments

*fops*

File operations for the driver

*unit*

Unit number to allocate

*dev*

device pointer

## Description

Allocate a special sound device by minor number from the sound subsystem. The allocated number is returned on success. On failure a negative error code is returned.

# register\_sound\_mixer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`register_sound_mixer` — register a mixer device

## Synopsis

```
int register_sound_mixer (const struct file_operations * fops,
int dev);
```

## Arguments

*fops*

File operations for the driver

*dev*

Unit number to allocate

## Description

Allocate a mixer device. Unit is the number of the mixer requested. Pass -1 to request the next free mixer unit. On success the allocated number is returned, on failure a negative error code is returned.

# register\_sound\_midi

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`register_sound_midi` — register a midi device

## Synopsis

```
int register_sound_midi (const struct file_operations * fops,
int dev);
```

## Arguments

*fops*

File operations for the driver

*dev*

Unit number to allocate

## Description

Allocate a midi device. Unit is the number of the midi device requested. Pass -1 to request the next free midi unit. On success the allocated number is returned, on failure a negative error code is returned.

# register\_sound\_dsp

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`register_sound_dsp` — register a DSP device

## Synopsis

```
int register_sound_dsp (const struct file_operations * fops,
int dev);
```

## Arguments

*fops*

File operations for the driver

*dev*

Unit number to allocate

## Description

Allocate a DSP device. Unit is the number of the DSP requested. Pass -1 to request the next free DSP unit. On success the allocated number is returned, on failure a negative error code is returned.

This function allocates both the audio and dsp device entries together and will always allocate them as a matching pair - eg dsp3/audio3

# unregister\_sound\_special

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`unregister_sound_special` — unregister a special sound device

## Synopsis

```
void unregister_sound_special (int unit);
```

## Arguments

*unit*

unit number to allocate

## Description

Release a sound device that was allocated with `register_sound_special`. The unit passed is the return value from the register function.

# unregister\_sound\_mixer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`unregister_sound_mixer` — unregister a mixer

## Synopsis

```
void unregister_sound_mixer (int unit);
```

## Arguments

*unit*

unit number to allocate

## Description

Release a sound device that was allocated with `register_sound_mixer`. The `unit` passed is the return value from the register function.

# unregister\_sound\_midi

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`unregister_sound_midi` — unregister a midi device

## Synopsis

```
void unregister_sound_midi (int unit);
```

## Arguments

*unit*

unit number to allocate

## Description

Release a sound device that was allocated with `register_sound_midi`. The `unit` passed is the return value from the register function.



# unregister\_sound\_dsp

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`unregister_sound_dsp` — unregister a DSP device

### Synopsis

```
void unregister_sound_dsp (int unit);
```

### Arguments

*unit*

unit number to allocate

### Description

Release a sound device that was allocated with `register_sound_dsp`. The `unit` passed is the return value from the register function.

Both of the allocated units are released together automatically.

# snd\_pcm\_playback\_ready

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_playback_ready` — check whether the playback buffer is available

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_playback_ready (struct snd_pcm_substream *  
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

Checks whether enough free space is available on the playback buffer.

Returns non-zero if available, or zero if not.

# snd\_pcm\_capture\_ready

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_capture_ready` — check whether the capture buffer is available

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_capture_ready (struct snd_pcm_substream *
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

Checks whether enough capture data is available on the capture buffer.

Returns non-zero if available, or zero if not.

# snd\_pcm\_playback\_data

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_playback_data` — check whether any data exists on the playback buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_playback_data (struct snd_pcm_substream *
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

Checks whether any data exists on the playback buffer. If `stop_threshold` is bigger or equal to `boundary`, then this function returns always non-zero.

Returns non-zero if exists, or zero if not.

# snd\_pcm\_playback\_empty

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_playback_empty` — check whether the playback buffer is empty

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_playback_empty (struct snd_pcm_substream *  
substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

Checks whether the playback buffer is empty.

Returns non-zero if empty, or zero if not.

# snd\_pcm\_capture\_empty

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_capture_empty` — check whether the capture buffer is empty

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_capture_empty (struct snd_pcm_substream *  
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

Checks whether the capture buffer is empty.

Returns non-zero if empty, or zero if not.

# snd\_pcm\_format\_cpu\_endian

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_format_cpu_endian` — Check the PCM format is CPU-endian

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_format_cpu_endian (snd_pcm_format_t format);
```

### Arguments

*format*

the format to check

### Description

Returns 1 if the given PCM format is CPU-endian, 0 if opposite, or a negative error code if endian not specified.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_alloc\_vmalloc\_buffer

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer` — allocate virtual DMA buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer (struct snd_pcm_substream
* substream, size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the substream to allocate the buffer to

*size*

the requested buffer size, in bytes

## Description

Allocates the PCM substream buffer using `vmalloc`, i.e., the memory is contiguous in kernel virtual space, but not in physical memory. Use this if the buffer is accessed by kernel code but not by device DMA.

Returns 1 if the buffer was changed, 0 if not changed, or a negative error code.

## `snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_32_buffer`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_32_buffer` — allocate 32-bit-addressable buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_32_buffer (struct  
snd_pcm_substream * substream, size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the substream to allocate the buffer to

*size*

the requested buffer size, in bytes

## Description

This function works like `snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer`, but uses `vmalloc_32`, i.e., the pages are allocated from 32-bit-addressable memory.

## `snd_pcm_new_stream`

**LINUX**



## Name

`snd_pcm_new_stream` — create a new PCM stream

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_new_stream (struct snd_pcm * pcm, int stream, int  
    substream_count);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

the pcm instance

*stream*

the stream direction, `SNDRV_PCM_STREAM_XXX`

*substream\_count*

the number of substreams

## Description

Creates a new stream for the pcm. The corresponding stream on the pcm must have been empty before calling this, i.e. zero must be given to the argument of `snd_pcm_new`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## `snd_pcm_new`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_pcm_new` — create a new PCM instance

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_new (struct snd_card * card, const char * id, int
device, int playback_count, int capture_count, struct snd_pcm
** rpcm);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the id string

*device*

the device index (zero based)

*playback\_count*

the number of substreams for playback

*capture\_count*

the number of substreams for capture

*rpcm*

the pointer to store the new pcm instance

## Description

Creates a new PCM instance.

The pcm operators have to be set afterwards to the new instance via `snd_pcm_set_ops`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## snd\_device\_new

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_device_new` — create an ALSA device component

### Synopsis

```
int snd_device_new (struct snd_card * card, snd_device_type_t
type, void * device_data, struct snd_device_ops * ops);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*type*

the device type, `SNDRV_DEV_XXX`

*device\_data*

the data pointer of this device

*ops*

the operator table

## Description

Creates a new device component for the given data pointer. The device will be assigned to the card and managed together by the card.

The data pointer plays a role as the identifier, too, so the pointer address must be unique and unchanged.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## snd\_device\_free

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_device_free` — release the device from the card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_device_free (struct snd_card * card, void *  
device_data);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*device\_data*

the data pointer to release

## Description

Removes the device from the list on the card and invokes the callbacks, `dev_disconnect` and `dev_free`, corresponding to the state. Then release the device.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure or if the device not found.

# snd\_device\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_device_register` — register the device

## Synopsis

```
int snd_device_register (struct snd_card * card, void *  
device_data);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*device\_data*

the data pointer to register

## Description

Registers the device which was already created via `snd_device_new`. Usually this is called from `snd_card_register`, but it can be called later if any new devices are created after invocation of `snd_card_register`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure or if the device not found.

## snd\_iprintf

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_iprintf` — printf on the procfs buffer

### Synopsis

```
int snd_iprintf (struct snd_info_buffer * buffer, const char *  
fmt, ...);
```

### Arguments

*buffer*

the procfs buffer

*fmt*

the printf format

...

variable arguments

## Description

Outputs the string on the procfs buffer just like `printf`.

Returns the size of output string.

# snd\_info\_get\_line

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_info_get_line` — read one line from the procfs buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_info_get_line (struct snd_info_buffer * buffer, char *  
line, int len);
```

## Arguments

*buffer*

the procfs buffer

*line*

the buffer to store

*len*

the max. buffer size - 1

## Description

Reads one line from the buffer and stores the string.

Returns zero if successful, or 1 if error or EOF.

# snd\_info\_get\_str

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

snd\_info\_get\_str — parse a string token

## Synopsis

```
const char * snd_info_get_str (char * dest, const char * src,  
int len);
```

## Arguments

*dest*

the buffer to store the string token

*src*

the original string

*len*

the max. length of token - 1



## Description

Parses the original string and copy a token to the given string buffer.

Returns the updated pointer of the original string so that it can be used for the next call.

## snd\_info\_create\_module\_entry

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_info_create_module_entry` — create an info entry for the given module

## Synopsis

```
struct snd_info_entry * snd_info_create_module_entry (struct
module * module, const char * name, struct snd_info_entry *
parent);
```

## Arguments

*module*

the module pointer

*name*

the file name

*parent*

the parent directory

## Description

Creates a new info entry and assigns it to the given module.

Returns the pointer of the new instance, or NULL on failure.

# snd\_info\_create\_card\_entry

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_info_create_card_entry` — create an info entry for the given card

## Synopsis

```
struct snd_info_entry * snd_info_create_card_entry (struct
snd_card * card, const char * name, struct snd_info_entry *
parent);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*name*

the file name

*parent*

the parent directory

## Description

Creates a new info entry and assigns it to the given card.

Returns the pointer of the new instance, or NULL on failure.

# snd\_card\_proc\_new

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_card_proc_new` — create an info entry for the given card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_card_proc_new (struct snd_card * card, const char *  
name, struct snd_info_entry ** entryp);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*name*

the file name

*entryp*

the pointer to store the new info entry

## Description

Creates a new info entry and assigns it to the given card. Unlike `snd_info_create_card_entry`, this function registers the info entry as an ALSA device component, so that it can be unregistered/released without explicit call. Also, you don't have to register this entry via `snd_info_register`, since this will be registered by `snd_card_register` automatically.

The parent is assumed as `card->proc_root`.

For releasing this entry, use `snd_device_free` instead of `snd_info_free_entry`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## snd\_info\_free\_entry

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_info_free_entry` — release the info entry

### Synopsis

```
void snd_info_free_entry (struct snd_info_entry * entry);
```

### Arguments

*entry*

the info entry

## Description

Releases the info entry. Don't call this after registered.

# snd\_info\_register

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_info_register` — register the info entry

## Synopsis

```
int snd_info_register (struct snd_info_entry * entry);
```

## Arguments

*entry*

the info entry

## Description

Registers the proc info entry.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_rawmidi\_receive

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_rawmidi_receive` — receive the input data from the device

### Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_receive (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream, const unsigned char * buffer, int count);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*buffer*

the buffer pointer

*count*

the data size to read

### Description

Reads the data from the internal buffer.

Returns the size of read data, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_rawmidi\_transmit\_empty

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_rawmidi_transmit_empty` — check whether the output buffer is empty

### Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_transmit_empty (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

### Description

Returns 1 if the internal output buffer is empty, 0 if not.

# \_\_snd\_rawmidi\_transmit\_peek

## LINUX

## Name

`__snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek` — copy data from the internal buffer

## Synopsis

```
int __snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek (struct snd_rawmidi_substream
* substream, unsigned char * buffer, int count);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*buffer*

the buffer pointer

*count*

data size to transfer

## Description

This is a variant of `snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek` without spinlock.

# snd\_rawmidi\_transmit\_peek

**LINUX**



## Name

`snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek` — copy data from the internal buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_transmit_peek (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream, unsigned char * buffer, int count);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*buffer*

the buffer pointer

*count*

data size to transfer

## Description

Copies data from the internal output buffer to the given buffer.

Call this in the interrupt handler when the midi output is ready, and call `snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack` after the transmission is finished.

## Return

The size of copied data, or a negative error code on failure.

# \_\_snd\_rawmidi\_transmit\_ack

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`__snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack` — acknowledge the transmission

### Synopsis

```
int __snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream, int count);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*count*

the tranferred count

### Description

This is a variant of `__snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack` without spinlock.

# snd\_rawmidi\_transmit\_ack

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack` — acknowledge the transmission

## Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_transmit_ack (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream, int count);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*count*

the transferred count

## Description

Advances the hardware pointer for the internal output buffer with the given size and updates the condition. Call after the transmission is finished.

## Return

The advanced size if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_rawmidi\_transmit

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_rawmidi_transmit` — copy from the buffer to the device

## Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_transmit (struct snd_rawmidi_substream *  
    substream, unsigned char * buffer, int count);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the rawmidi substream

*buffer*

the buffer pointer

*count*

the data size to transfer

## Description

Copies data from the buffer to the device and advances the pointer.

Returns the copied size if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## `snd_rawmidi_new`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_rawmidi_new` — create a rawmidi instance

## Synopsis

```
int snd_rawmidi_new (struct snd_card * card, char * id, int
device, int output_count, int input_count, struct snd_rawmidi
** rrawmidi);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the id string

*device*

the device index

*output\_count*

the number of output streams

*input\_count*

the number of input streams

*rrawmidi*

the pointer to store the new rawmidi instance

## Description

Creates a new rawmidi instance. Use `snd_rawmidi_set_ops` to set the operators to the new instance.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

## snd\_rawmidi\_set\_ops

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_rawmidi\_set\_ops — set the rawmidi operators

### Synopsis

```
void snd_rawmidi_set_ops (struct snd_rawmidi * rmidi, int  
stream, struct snd_rawmidi_ops * ops);
```

### Arguments

*rmidi*

the rawmidi instance

*stream*

the stream direction, SNDRV\_RAWMIDI\_STREAM\_XXX

*ops*

the operator table

### Description

Sets the rawmidi operators for the given stream direction.

# snd\_request\_card

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_request_card` — try to load the card module

### Synopsis

```
void snd_request_card (int card);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card number

### Description

Tries to load the module “snd-card-X” for the given card number via `request_module`. Returns immediately if already loaded.

# snd\_lookup\_minor\_data

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_lookup_minor_data` — get user data of a registered device

## Synopsis

```
void * snd_lookup_minor_data (unsigned int minor, int type);
```

## Arguments

*minor*

the minor number

*type*

device type (SNDRV\_DEVICE\_TYPE\_XXX)

## Description

Checks that a minor device with the specified type is registered, and returns its user data pointer.

This function increments the reference counter of the card instance if an associated instance with the given minor number and type is found. The caller must call `snd_card_unref` appropriately later.

## `snd_register_device_for_dev`

**LINUX**



## Name

`snd_register_device_for_dev` — Register the ALSA device file for the card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_register_device_for_dev (int type, struct snd_card *  
card, int dev, const struct file_operations * f_ops, void *  
private_data, const char * name, struct device * device);
```

## Arguments

*type*

the device type, SNDRV\_DEVICE\_TYPE\_XXX

*card*

the card instance

*dev*

the device index

*f\_ops*

the file operations

*private\_data*

user pointer for `f_ops->open`

*name*

the device file name

*device*

the struct device to link this new device to

## Description

Registers an ALSA device file for the given card. The operators have to be set in `reg` parameter.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_unregister\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_unregister_device` — unregister the device on the given card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_unregister_device (int type, struct snd_card * card,  
int dev);
```

## Arguments

*type*

the device type, `SNDRV_DEVICE_TYPE_XXX`

*card*

the card instance

*dev*

the device index

## Description

Unregisters the device file already registered via `snd_register_device`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure

# copy\_to\_user\_fromio

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`copy_to_user_fromio` — copy data from mmio-space to user-space

## Synopsis

```
int copy_to_user_fromio (void __user * dst, const volatile
void __iomem * src, size_t count);
```

## Arguments

*dst*

the destination pointer on user-space

*src*

the source pointer on mmio

*count*

the data size to copy in bytes

## Description

Copies the data from mmio-space to user-space.

Returns zero if successful, or non-zero on failure.

# copy\_from\_user\_toio

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`copy_from_user_toio` — copy data from user-space to mmio-space

## Synopsis

```
int copy_from_user_toio (volatile void __iomem * dst, const  
void __user * src, size_t count);
```

## Arguments

*dst*

the destination pointer on mmio-space

*src*

the source pointer on user-space

*count*

the data size to copy in bytes

## Description

Copies the data from user-space to mmio-space.

Returns zero if successful, or non-zero on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_preallocate\_free\_for\_all

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_free_for_all` — release all pre-allocated buffers on the pcm

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_free_for_all (struct snd_pcm *
pcm);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

the pcm instance

## Description

Releases all the pre-allocated buffers on the given pcm.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_preallocate\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages` — pre-allocation for the given DMA type

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages (struct snd_pcm_substream *  
    substream, int type, struct device * data, size_t size, size_t  
    max);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

*type*

DMA type (SNDRV\_DMA\_TYPE\_\*)

*data*

DMA type dependent data

*size*

the requested pre-allocation size in bytes

*max*

the max. allowed pre-allocation size

## Description

Do pre-allocation for the given DMA buffer type.

When `substream->dma_buf_id` is set, the function tries to look for the reserved buffer, and the buffer is not freed but reserved at destruction time. The `dma_buf_id` must be unique for all systems (in the same DMA buffer type) e.g. using `snd_dma_pci_buf_id`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_preallocate\_pages\_for\_all

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages_for_all` — pre-allocation for continuous memory type (all substreams)

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_pages_for_all (struct snd_pcm *
pcm, int type, void * data, size_t size, size_t max);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

the pcm instance

*type*

DMA type (SNDRV\_DMA\_TYPE\_\*)

*data*

DMA type dependent data

*size*

the requested pre-allocation size in bytes

*max*

the max. allowed pre-allocation size

## Description

Do pre-allocation to all substreams of the given pcm for the specified DMA type.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_sgbuf\_ops\_page

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_sgbuf_ops_page` — get the page struct at the given offset

## Synopsis

```
struct page * snd_pcm_sgbuf_ops_page (struct snd_pcm_substream  
* substream, unsigned long offset);
```



## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

*offset*

the buffer offset

## Description

Returns the page struct at the given buffer offset. Used as the page callback of PCM ops.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_malloc\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

snd\_pcm\_lib\_malloc\_pages — allocate the DMA buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_malloc_pages (struct snd_pcm_substream *
substream, size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the substream to allocate the DMA buffer to

*size*

the requested buffer size in bytes

## Description

Allocates the DMA buffer on the BUS type given earlier to `snd_pcm_lib_preallocate_xxx_pages`.

Returns 1 if the buffer is changed, 0 if not changed, or a negative code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_free\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_free_pages` — release the allocated DMA buffer.

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_free_pages (struct snd_pcm_substream *  
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the substream to release the DMA buffer

## Description

Releases the DMA buffer allocated via `snd_pcm_lib_malloc_pages`.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_free\_vmalloc\_buffer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_free_vmalloc_buffer` — free vmalloc buffer

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_free_vmalloc_buffer (struct snd_pcm_substream
* stream);
```

## Arguments

*stream*

the substream with a buffer allocated by  
`snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer`

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_get\_vmalloc\_page

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_lib_get_vmalloc_page` — map vmalloc buffer offset to page struct

## Synopsis

```
struct page * snd_pcm_lib_get_vmalloc_page (struct
snd_pcm_substream * substream, unsigned long offset);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the substream with a buffer allocated by  
`snd_pcm_lib_alloc_vmalloc_buffer`

*offset*

offset in the buffer

## Description

This function is to be used as the page callback in the PCM ops.

## `snd_card_create`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_card_create` — create and initialize a soundcard structure

## Synopsis

```
int snd_card_create (int idx, const char * xid, struct module  
* module, int extra_size, struct snd_card ** card_ret);
```

## Arguments

*idx*

card index (address) [0 ... (SNDRV\_CARDS-1)]

*xid*

card identification (ASCII string)

*module*

top level module for locking

*extra\_size*

allocate this extra size after the main soundcard structure

*card\_ret*

the pointer to store the created card instance

## Description

Creates and initializes a soundcard structure.

The function allocates `snd_card` instance via `kzalloc` with the given space for the driver to use freely. The allocated struct is stored in the given `card_ret` pointer.

Returns zero if successful or a negative error code.

# snd\_card\_disconnect

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_card_disconnect` — disconnect all APIs from the file-operations (user space)

### Synopsis

```
int snd_card_disconnect (struct snd_card * card);
```

### Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

### Description

Disconnects all APIs from the file-operations (user space).

Returns zero, otherwise a negative error code.

### Note

The current implementation replaces all active file->f\_op with special dummy file operations (they do nothing except release).

# snd\_card\_unref

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_card_unref` — release the reference counter

### Synopsis

```
void snd_card_unref (struct snd_card * card);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

### Description

Decrements the reference counter. When it reaches to zero, wake up the sleeper and call the destructor if needed.

# snd\_card\_set\_id

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_card_set_id` — set card identification name

## Synopsis

```
void snd_card_set_id (struct snd_card * card, const char *  
nid);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

*nid*

new identification string

## Description

This function sets the card identification and checks for name collisions.

# snd\_card\_register

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_card_register` — register the soundcard



## Synopsis

```
int snd_card_register (struct snd_card * card);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

## Description

This function registers all the devices assigned to the soundcard. Until calling this, the ALSA control interface is blocked from the external accesses. Thus, you should call this function at the end of the initialization of the card.

Returns zero otherwise a negative error code if the registration failed.

# snd\_component\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_component_add` — add a component string

## Synopsis

```
int snd_component_add (struct snd_card * card, const char *  
component);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

*component*

the component id string

## Description

This function adds the component id string to the supported list. The component can be referred from the alsa-lib.

Returns zero otherwise a negative error code.

# snd\_card\_file\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

snd\_card\_file\_add — add the file to the file list of the card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_card_file_add (struct snd_card * card, struct file *  
file);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

*file*

file pointer

## Description

This function adds the file to the file linked-list of the card. This linked-list is used to keep tracking the connection state, and to avoid the release of busy resources by hotplug.

Returns zero or a negative error code.

## snd\_card\_file\_remove

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

snd\_card\_file\_remove — remove the file from the file list

## Synopsis

```
int snd_card_file_remove (struct snd_card * card, struct file
* file);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

*file*

file pointer

## Description

This function removes the file formerly added to the card via `snd_card_file_add` function. If all files are removed and `snd_card_free_when_closed` was called beforehand, it processes the pending release of resources.

Returns zero or a negative error code.

# snd\_power\_wait

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_power_wait` — wait until the power-state is changed.

## Synopsis

```
int snd_power_wait (struct snd_card * card, unsigned int  
power_state);
```

## Arguments

*card*

soundcard structure

*power\_state*

expected power state

## Description

Waits until the power-state is changed.

## Note

the power lock must be active before call.

# snd\_dma\_program

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_program` — program an ISA DMA transfer

## Synopsis

```
void snd_dma_program (unsigned long dma, unsigned long addr,
unsigned int size, unsigned short mode);
```

## Arguments

*dma*

the dma number

*addr*

the physical address of the buffer

*size*

the DMA transfer size

*mode*

the DMA transfer mode, DMA\_MODE\_XXX

## Description

Programs an ISA DMA transfer for the given buffer.

# snd\_dma\_disable

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_disable` — stop the ISA DMA transfer

## Synopsis

```
void snd_dma_disable (unsigned long dma);
```

## Arguments

*dma*

the dma number

## Description

Stops the ISA DMA transfer.

# snd\_dma\_pointer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_pointer` — return the current pointer to DMA transfer buffer in bytes

## Synopsis

```
unsigned int snd_dma_pointer (unsigned long dma, unsigned int  
size);
```

## Arguments

*dma*

the dma number

*size*

the dma transfer size

## Description

Returns the current pointer in DMA transfer buffer in bytes

# snd\_ctl\_new1

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_ctl_new1` — create a control instance from the template

## Synopsis

```
struct snd_kcontrol * snd_ctl_new1 (const struct  
snd_kcontrol_new * ncontrol, void * private_data);
```

## Arguments

*ncontrol*

the initialization record

*private\_data*

the private data to set

## Description

Allocates a new struct `snd_kcontrol` instance and initialize from the given template. When the access field of `ncontrol` is 0, it's assumed as READWRITE access. When the count field is 0, it's assumes as one.

Returns the pointer of the newly generated instance, or NULL on failure.



# snd\_ctl\_free\_one

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_free_one` — release the control instance

### Synopsis

```
void snd_ctl_free_one (struct snd_kcontrol * kcontrol);
```

### Arguments

*kcontrol*

the control instance

### Description

Releases the control instance created via `snd_ctl_new` or `snd_ctl_new1`. Don't call this after the control was added to the card.

# snd\_ctl\_add

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_ctl_add` — add the control instance to the card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_add (struct snd_card * card, struct snd_kcontrol *  
kcontrol);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*kcontrol*

the control instance to add

## Description

Adds the control instance created via `snd_ctl_new` or `snd_ctl_new1` to the given card. Assigns also an unique numid used for fast search.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

It frees automatically the control which cannot be added.

## `snd_ctl_replace`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_ctl_replace` — replace the control instance of the card

## Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_replace (struct snd_card * card, struct  
snd_kcontrol * kcontrol, bool add_on_replace);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*kcontrol*

the control instance to replace

*add\_on\_replace*

add the control if not already added

## Description

Replaces the given control. If the given control does not exist and the `add_on_replace` flag is set, the control is added. If the control exists, it is destroyed first.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

It frees automatically the control which cannot be added or replaced.

# snd\_ctl\_remove

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_remove` — remove the control from the card and release it

### Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_remove (struct snd_card * card, struct  
snd_kcontrol * kcontrol);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*kcontrol*

the control instance to remove

### Description

Removes the control from the card and then releases the instance. You don't need to call `snd_ctl_free_one`. You must be in the write lock - `down_write(card->controls_rwsem)`.

Returns 0 if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_ctl\_remove\_id

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_remove_id` — remove the control of the given id and release it

### Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_remove_id (struct snd_card * card, struct  
snd_ctl_elem_id * id);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the control id to remove

### Description

Finds the control instance with the given id, removes it from the card list and releases it.

Returns 0 if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_ctl\_activate\_id

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_activate_id` — activate/inactivate the control of the given id

### Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_activate_id (struct snd_card * card, struct  
snd_ctl_elem_id * id, int active);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the control id to activate/inactivate

*active*

non-zero to activate

### Description

Finds the control instance with the given id, and activate or inactivate the control together with notification, if changed.

Returns 0 if unchanged, 1 if changed, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_ctl\_rename\_id

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_rename_id` — replace the id of a control on the card

### Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_rename_id (struct snd_card * card, struct  
snd_ctl_elem_id * src_id, struct snd_ctl_elem_id * dst_id);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*src\_id*

the old id

*dst\_id*

the new id

### Description

Finds the control with the old id from the card, and replaces the id with the new one.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_ctl\_find\_numid

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_find_numid` — find the control instance with the given number-id

### Synopsis

```
struct snd_kcontrol * snd_ctl_find_numid (struct snd_card *  
card, unsigned int numid);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*numid*

the number-id to search

### Description

Finds the control instance with the given number-id from the card.

Returns the pointer of the instance if found, or NULL if not.

The caller must down `card->controls_rwsem` before calling this function (if the race condition can happen).



# snd\_ctl\_find\_id

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_find_id` — find the control instance with the given id

### Synopsis

```
struct snd_kcontrol * snd_ctl_find_id (struct snd_card * card,  
struct snd_ctl_elem_id * id);
```

### Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the id to search

### Description

Finds the control instance with the given id from the card.

Returns the pointer of the instance if found, or NULL if not.

The caller must down `card->controls_rwsem` before calling this function (if the race condition can happen).

# snd\_ctl\_enum\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_ctl_enum_info` — fills the info structure for an enumerated control

### Synopsis

```
int snd_ctl_enum_info (struct snd_ctl_elem_info * info,  
unsigned int channels, unsigned int items, const char *const  
names[]);
```

### Arguments

*info*

the structure to be filled

*channels*

the number of the control's channels; often one

*items*

the number of control values; also the size of *names*

*names*[]

an array containing the names of all control values

### Description

Sets all required fields in *info* to their appropriate values. If the control's accessibility is not the default (readable and writable), the caller has to fill *info->access*.

# snd\_pcm\_set\_ops

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_pcm\_set\_ops — set the PCM operators

### Synopsis

```
void snd_pcm_set_ops (struct snd_pcm * pcm, int direction,  
struct snd_pcm_ops * ops);
```

### Arguments

*pcm*

the pcm instance

*direction*

stream direction, SNDRV\_PCM\_STREAM\_XXX

*ops*

the operator table

### Description

Sets the given PCM operators to the pcm instance.

# snd\_pcm\_set\_sync

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_set_sync` — set the PCM sync id

### Synopsis

```
void snd_pcm_set_sync (struct snd_pcm_substream * substream);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream

### Description

Sets the PCM sync identifier for the card.

# snd\_interval\_refine

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_interval_refine` — refine the interval value of configurator

## Synopsis

```
int snd_interval_refine (struct snd_interval * i, const struct
snd_interval * v);
```

## Arguments

*i*

the interval value to refine

*v*

the interval value to refer to

## Description

Refines the interval value with the reference value. The interval is changed to the range satisfying both intervals. The interval status (min, max, integer, etc.) are evaluated.

Returns non-zero if the value is changed, zero if not changed.

## snd\_interval\_ratnum

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_interval\_ratnum — refine the interval value

## Synopsis

```
int snd_interval_ratnum (struct snd_interval * i, unsigned int
rats_count, struct snd_ratnum * rats, unsigned int * nump,
unsigned int * denp);
```

## Arguments

*i*

interval to refine

*rats\_count*

number of `ratnum_t`

*rats*

`ratnum_t` array

*nump*

pointer to store the resultant numerator

*denp*

pointer to store the resultant denominator

## Description

Returns non-zero if the value is changed, zero if not changed.

## snd\_interval\_list

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_interval_list` — refine the interval value from the list

## Synopsis

```
int snd_interval_list (struct snd_interval * i, unsigned int  
count, unsigned int * list, unsigned int mask);
```

## Arguments

*i*

the interval value to refine

*count*

the number of elements in the list

*list*

the value list

*mask*

the bit-mask to evaluate

## Description

Refines the interval value from the list. When mask is non-zero, only the elements corresponding to bit 1 are evaluated.

Returns non-zero if the value is changed, zero if not changed.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_rule\_add

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_pcm\_hw\_rule\_add — add the hw-constraint rule

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_rule_add (struct snd_pcm_runtime * runtime,
unsigned int cond, int var, snd_pcm_hw_rule_func_t func, void
* private, int dep, ...);
```

### Arguments

*runtime*

the pcm runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

the variable to evaluate

*func*

the evaluation function

*private*

the private data pointer passed to function

*dep*

the dependent variables



...

variable arguments

## Description

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_integer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_integer` — apply an integer constraint to an interval

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_integer (struct snd_pcm_runtime *
runtime, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var);
```

## Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the integer constraint

## Description

Apply the constraint of integer to an interval parameter.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_minmax

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_minmax` — apply a min/max range constraint to an interval

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_minmax (struct snd_pcm_runtime *  
runtime, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, unsigned int min, unsigned  
int max);
```

## Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the range

*min*

the minimal value

*max*

the maximal value

## Description

Apply the min/max range constraint to an interval parameter.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_list

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_list` — apply a list of constraints to a parameter

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_list (struct snd_pcm_runtime *
runtime, unsigned int cond, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, struct
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_list * l);
```

## Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the list constraint

*l*

list

## Description

Apply the list of constraints to an interval parameter.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_ratnums

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratnums` — apply ratnums constraint to a parameter

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratnums (struct snd_pcm_runtime *  
runtime, unsigned int cond, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, struct  
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratnums * r);
```

## Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the ratnums constraint

*r*

struct snd\_ratnums constraints

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_ratdens

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratdens` — apply ratdens constraint to a parameter

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratdens (struct snd_pcm_runtime *
runtime, unsigned int cond, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, struct
snd_pcm_hw_constraint_ratdens * r);
```

## Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the ratdens constraint

*r*

struct `snd_ratdens` constraints

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_msbits

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_hw_constraint_msbits` — add a hw constraint msbits rule

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_msbits (struct snd_pcm_runtime *  
runtime, unsigned int cond, unsigned int width, unsigned int  
msbits);
```

### Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*width*

sample bits width

*msbits*

msbits width

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_step

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_step — add a hw constraint step rule

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_step (struct snd_pcm_runtime *  
runtime, unsigned int cond, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, unsigned  
long step);
```

### Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the step constraint

*step*

step size

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_pow2

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_pcm\_hw\_constraint\_pow2 — add a hw constraint power-of-2 rule

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_constraint_pow2 (struct snd_pcm_runtime *  
runtime, unsigned int cond, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var);
```

### Arguments

*runtime*

PCM runtime instance

*cond*

condition bits

*var*

hw\_params variable to apply the power-of-2 constraint

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_param\_value

## LINUX



## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_param_value` — return *params* field *var* value

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_param_value (const struct snd_pcm_hw_params *
    params, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, int * dir);
```

## Arguments

*params*

the `hw_params` instance

*var*

parameter to retrieve

*dir*

pointer to the direction (-1,0,1) or `NULL`

## Description

Return the value for field *var* if it's fixed in configuration space defined by *params*. Return `-EINVAL` otherwise.

## `snd_pcm_hw_param_first`

**LINUX**

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_param_first` — refine config space and return minimum value

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_param_first (struct snd_pcm_substream * pcm,  
struct snd_pcm_hw_params * params, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, int  
* dir);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

PCM instance

*params*

the `hw_params` instance

*var*

parameter to retrieve

*dir*

pointer to the direction (-1,0,1) or `NULL`

## Description

Inside configuration space defined by *params* remove from *var* all values > minimum. Reduce configuration space accordingly. Return the minimum.

# snd\_pcm\_hw\_param\_last

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_hw_param_last` — refine config space and return maximum value

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_hw_param_last (struct snd_pcm_substream * pcm,
struct snd_pcm_hw_params * params, snd_pcm_hw_param_t var, int
* dir);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

PCM instance

*params*

the `hw_params` instance

*var*

parameter to retrieve

*dir*

pointer to the direction (-1,0,1) or NULL

## Description

Inside configuration space defined by *params* remove from *var* all values < maximum. Reduce configuration space accordingly. Return the maximum.

# snd\_pcm\_lib\_ioctl

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_lib_ioctl` — a generic PCM ioctl callback

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_lib_ioctl (struct snd_pcm_substream * substream,  
unsigned int cmd, void * arg);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

*cmd*

ioctl command

*arg*

ioctl argument

### Description

Processes the generic ioctl commands for PCM. Can be passed as the ioctl callback for PCM ops.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_period\_elapsed

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_pcm_period_elapsed` — update the pcm status for the next period

## Synopsis

```
void snd_pcm_period_elapsed (struct snd_pcm_substream *
    substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the pcm substream instance

## Description

This function is called from the interrupt handler when the PCM has processed the period size. It will update the current pointer, wake up sleepers, etc.

Even if more than one periods have elapsed since the last call, you have to call this only once.

# snd\_hwdep\_new

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_hwdep_new` — create a new hwdep instance

## Synopsis

```
int snd_hwdep_new (struct snd_card * card, char * id, int
device, struct snd_hwdep ** rhwdep);
```

## Arguments

*card*

the card instance

*id*

the id string

*device*

the device index (zero-based)

*rhwdep*

the pointer to store the new hwdep instance

## Description

Creates a new hwdep instance with the given index on the card. The callbacks (`hwdep->ops`) must be set on the returned instance after this call manually by the caller.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative error code on failure.

# snd\_pcm\_stop

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`snd_pcm_stop` — try to stop all running streams in the substream group

### Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_stop (struct snd_pcm_substream * substream,  
snd_pcm_state_t state);
```

### Arguments

*substream*

the PCM substream instance

*state*

PCM state after stopping the stream

### Description

The state of each stream is then changed to the given state unconditionally.

# snd\_pcm\_suspend

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_suspend` — trigger SUSPEND to all linked streams

## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_suspend (struct snd_pcm_substream * substream);
```

## Arguments

*substream*

the PCM substream

## Description

After this call, all streams are changed to SUSPENDED state.

# snd\_pcm\_suspend\_all

## LINUX

## Name

`snd_pcm_suspend_all` — trigger SUSPEND to all substreams in the given pcm



## Synopsis

```
int snd_pcm_suspend_all (struct snd_pcm * pcm);
```

## Arguments

*pcm*

the PCM instance

## Description

After this call, all streams are changed to SUSPENDED state.

# snd\_malloc\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_malloc_pages` — allocate pages with the given size

## Synopsis

```
void * snd_malloc_pages (size_t size, gfp_t gfp_flags);
```

## Arguments

*size*

the size to allocate in bytes

*gfp\_flags*

the allocation conditions, GFP\_XXX

## Description

Allocates the physically contiguous pages with the given size.

Returns the pointer of the buffer, or NULL if no enough memory.

# snd\_free\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

snd\_free\_pages — release the pages

## Synopsis

```
void snd_free_pages (void * ptr, size_t size);
```

## Arguments

*ptr*

the buffer pointer to release

*size*

the allocated buffer size

## Description

Releases the buffer allocated via `snd_malloc_pages`.

# snd\_dma\_alloc\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_alloc_pages` — allocate the buffer area according to the given type

## Synopsis

```
int snd_dma_alloc_pages (int type, struct device * device,
size_t size, struct snd_dma_buffer * dmab);
```

## Arguments

*type*

the DMA buffer type

*device*

the device pointer

*size*

the buffer size to allocate

*dmab*

buffer allocation record to store the allocated data

## Description

Calls the memory-allocator function for the corresponding buffer type.

Returns zero if the buffer with the given size is allocated successfully, other a negative value at error.

# snd\_dma\_alloc\_pages\_fallback

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_alloc_pages_fallback` — allocate the buffer area according to the given type with fallback

## Synopsis

```
int snd_dma_alloc_pages_fallback (int type, struct device *  
device, size_t size, struct snd_dma_buffer * dmab);
```

## Arguments

*type*

the DMA buffer type

*device*

the device pointer

*size*

the buffer size to allocate

*dmab*

buffer allocation record to store the allocated data

## Description

Calls the memory-allocator function for the corresponding buffer type. When no space is left, this function reduces the size and tries to allocate again. The size actually allocated is stored in `res_size` argument.

Returns zero if the buffer with the given size is allocated successfully, other a negative value at error.

# snd\_dma\_free\_pages

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_free_pages` — release the allocated buffer

## Synopsis

```
void snd_dma_free_pages (struct snd_dma_buffer * dmab);
```

## Arguments

*dmab*

the buffer allocation record to release

## Description

Releases the allocated buffer via `snd_dma_alloc_pages`.

# snd\_dma\_get\_reserved\_buf

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`snd_dma_get_reserved_buf` — get the reserved buffer for the given device

## Synopsis

```
size_t snd_dma_get_reserved_buf (struct snd_dma_buffer * dmab,  
unsigned int id);
```

## Arguments

*dmab*

the buffer allocation record to store

*id*

the buffer id

## Description

Looks for the reserved-buffer list and re-uses if the same buffer is found in the list. When the buffer is found, it's removed from the free list.

Returns the size of buffer if the buffer is found, or zero if not found.

# snd\_dma\_reserve\_buf

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

snd\_dma\_reserve\_buf — reserve the buffer

### Synopsis

```
int snd_dma_reserve_buf (struct snd_dma_buffer * dmab,  
unsigned int id);
```

### Arguments

*dmab*

the buffer to reserve

*id*

the buffer id

### Description

Reserves the given buffer as a reserved buffer.

Returns zero if successful, or a negative code at error.





# Chapter 6. 16x50 UART Driver

**/usr/src/linux-3.0.101-  
1.g7186a39//include/linux/serial\_core.h**

## Name

/usr/src/linux-3.0.101-1.g7186a39//include/linux/serial\_core.h  
— Document generation inconsistency

## Oops

### Warning

The template for this document tried to insert the structured comment from the file

/usr/src/linux-3.0.101-1.g7186a39//include/linux/serial\_core.h  
at this point, but none was found. This dummy section is inserted to allow generation to continue.

## uart\_update\_timeout

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers ManualJune 2017

## Name

uart\_update\_timeout — update per-port FIFO timeout.

## Synopsis

```
void uart_update_timeout (struct uart_port * port, unsigned  
int cflag, unsigned int baud);
```

## Arguments

*port*

uart\_port structure describing the port

*cflag*

termios cflag value

*baud*

speed of the port

## Description

Set the port FIFO timeout value. The *cflag* value should reflect the actual hardware settings.

# uart\_get\_baud\_rate

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

uart\_get\_baud\_rate — return baud rate for a particular port

## Synopsis

```
unsigned int uart_get_baud_rate (struct uart_port * port,
struct ktermios * termios, struct ktermios * old, unsigned int
min, unsigned int max);
```

## Arguments

*port*

uart\_port structure describing the port in question.

*termios*

desired termios settings.

*old*

old termios (or NULL)

*min*

minimum acceptable baud rate

*max*

maximum acceptable baud rate

## Description

Decode the termios structure into a numeric baud rate, taking account of the magic 38400 baud rate (with `spd_*` flags), and mapping the B0 rate to 9600 baud.

If the new baud rate is invalid, try the old termios setting. If it's still invalid, we try 9600 baud.

Update the *termios* structure to reflect the baud rate we're actually going to be using. Don't do this for the case where B0 is requested ("hang up").

# uart\_get\_divisor

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uart_get_divisor` — return uart clock divisor

### Synopsis

```
unsigned int uart_get_divisor (struct uart_port * port,  
unsigned int baud);
```

### Arguments

*port*

uart\_port structure describing the port.

*baud*

desired baud rate

### Description

Calculate the uart clock divisor for the port.

# uart\_parse\_options

## LINUX

## Name

`uart_parse_options` — Parse serial port baud/parity/bits/flow contro.

## Synopsis

```
void uart_parse_options (char * options, int * baud, int *  
parity, int * bits, int * flow);
```

## Arguments

*options*

pointer to option string

*baud*

pointer to an 'int' variable for the baud rate.

*parity*

pointer to an 'int' variable for the parity.

*bits*

pointer to an 'int' variable for the number of data bits.

*flow*

pointer to an 'int' variable for the flow control character.

## Description

`uart_parse_options` decodes a string containing the serial console options. The format of the string is <baud><parity><bits><flow>.

**eg**

115200n8r

## uart\_set\_options

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

uart\_set\_options — setup the serial console parameters

### Synopsis

```
int uart_set_options (struct uart_port * port, struct console
* co, int baud, int parity, int bits, int flow);
```

### Arguments

*port*

pointer to the serial ports uart\_port structure

*co*

console pointer

*baud*

baud rate

*parity*

parity character - 'n' (none), 'o' (odd), 'e' (even)

*bits*

number of data bits

*flow*

flow control character - 'r' (rts)

## uart\_register\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uart_register_driver` — register a driver with the uart core layer

### Synopsis

```
int uart_register_driver (struct uart_driver * drv);
```

### Arguments

*drv*

low level driver structure

### Description

Register a uart driver with the core driver. We in turn register with the tty layer, and initialise the core driver per-port state.

We have a proc file in `/proc/tty/driver` which is named after the normal driver.

`drv->port` should be `NULL`, and the per-port structures should be registered using `uart_add_one_port` after this call has succeeded.

## uart\_unregister\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uart_unregister_driver` — remove a driver from the uart core layer

### Synopsis

```
void uart_unregister_driver (struct uart_driver * drv);
```

### Arguments

*drv*

low level driver structure

### Description

Remove all references to a driver from the core driver. The low level driver must have removed all its ports via the `uart_remove_one_port` if it registered them with `uart_add_one_port`. (ie, `drv->port == NULL`)



# uart\_add\_one\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`uart_add_one_port` — attach a driver-defined port structure

### Synopsis

```
int uart_add_one_port (struct uart_driver * drv, struct
uart_port * uport);
```

### Arguments

*drv*

pointer to the uart low level driver structure for this port

*uport*

uart port structure to use for this port.

### Description

This allows the driver to register its own `uart_port` structure with the core driver. The main purpose is to allow the low level uart drivers to expand `uart_port`, rather than having yet more levels of structures.

# uart\_remove\_one\_port

## LINUX

## Name

`uart_remove_one_port` — detach a driver defined port structure

## Synopsis

```
int uart_remove_one_port (struct uart_driver * drv, struct
uart_port * uport);
```

## Arguments

*drv*

pointer to the uart low level driver structure for this port

*uport*

uart port structure for this port

## Description

This unhooks (and hangs up) the specified port structure from the core driver. No further calls will be made to the low-level code for this port.

## `uart_handle_dcd_change`

**LINUX**

## Name

`uart_handle_dcd_change` — handle a change of carrier detect state

## Synopsis

```
void uart_handle_dcd_change (struct uart_port * uport,  
unsigned int status);
```

## Arguments

*uport*

uart\_port structure for the open port

*status*

new carrier detect status, nonzero if active

# uart\_handle\_cts\_change

## LINUX

## Name

`uart_handle_cts_change` — handle a change of clear-to-send state

## Synopsis

```
void uart_handle_cts_change (struct uart_port * uport,
unsigned int status);
```

## Arguments

*uport*

uart\_port structure for the open port

*status*

new clear to send status, nonzero if active

## serial8250\_suspend\_port

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

serial8250\_suspend\_port — suspend one serial port

## Synopsis

```
void serial8250_suspend_port (int line);
```

## Arguments

*line*

serial line number

## Description

Suspend one serial port.

# serial8250\_resume\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`serial8250_resume_port` — resume one serial port

## Synopsis

```
void serial8250_resume_port (int line);
```

## Arguments

*line*

serial line number

## Description

Resume one serial port.

# serial8250\_register\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`serial8250_register_port` — register a serial port

### Synopsis

```
int serial8250_register_port (struct uart_port * port);
```

### Arguments

*port*

serial port template

### Description

Configure the serial port specified by the request. If the port exists and is in use, it is hung up and unregistered first.

The port is then probed and if necessary the IRQ is autodetected. If this fails an error is returned.

On success the port is ready to use and the line number is returned.

# serial8250\_unregister\_port

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`serial8250_unregister_port` — remove a 16x50 serial port at runtime

### Synopsis

```
void serial8250_unregister_port (int line);
```

### Arguments

*line*

serial line number

### Description

Remove one serial port. This may not be called from interrupt context. We hand the port back to the our control.





# Chapter 7. Frame Buffer Library

The frame buffer drivers depend heavily on four data structures. These structures are declared in `include/linux/fb.h`. They are `fb_info`, `fb_var_screeninfo`, `fb_fix_screeninfo` and `fb_monospecs`. The last three can be made available to and from userland.

`fb_info` defines the current state of a particular video card. Inside `fb_info`, there exists a `fb_ops` structure which is a collection of needed functions to make `fbdev` and `fbcon` work. `fb_info` is only visible to the kernel.

`fb_var_screeninfo` is used to describe the features of a video card that are user defined. With `fb_var_screeninfo`, things such as depth and the resolution may be defined.

The next structure is `fb_fix_screeninfo`. This defines the properties of a card that are created when a mode is set and can't be changed otherwise. A good example of this is the start of the frame buffer memory. This "locks" the address of the frame buffer memory, so that it cannot be changed or moved.

The last structure is `fb_monospecs`. In the old API, there was little importance for `fb_monospecs`. This allowed for forbidden things such as setting a mode of 800x600 on a fix frequency monitor. With the new API, `fb_monospecs` prevents such things, and if used correctly, can prevent a monitor from being cooked. `fb_monospecs` will not be useful until kernels 2.5.x.

## 7.1. Frame Buffer Memory

### `register_framebuffer`

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### **Name**

`register_framebuffer` — registers a frame buffer device

## Synopsis

```
int register_framebuffer (struct fb_info * fb_info);
```

## Arguments

*fb\_info*

frame buffer info structure

## Description

Registers a frame buffer device *fb\_info*.

Returns negative errno on error, or zero for success.

## unregister\_framebuffer

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`unregister_framebuffer` — releases a frame buffer device

## Synopsis

```
int unregister_framebuffer (struct fb_info * fb_info);
```

## Arguments

*fb\_info*

frame buffer info structure

## Description

Unregisters a frame buffer device *fb\_info*.

Returns negative *errno* on error, or zero for success.

This function will also notify the framebuffer console to release the driver.

This is meant to be called within a driver's `module_exit` function. If this is called outside `module_exit`, ensure that the driver implements `fb_open` and `fb_release` to check that no processes are using the device.

## fb\_set\_suspend

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`fb_set_suspend` — low level driver signals suspend

### Synopsis

```
void fb_set_suspend (struct fb_info * info, int state);
```

## Arguments

*info*

framebuffer affected

*state*

0 = resuming, !=0 = suspending

## Description

This is meant to be used by low level drivers to signal suspend/resume to the core & clients. It must be called with the console semaphore held

# fb\_get\_options

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_get_options` — get kernel boot parameters

## Synopsis

```
int fb_get_options (char * name, char ** option);
```

## Arguments

*name*

framebuffer name as it would appear in the boot parameter line  
(video=<name>:<options>)

*option*

the option will be stored here

## NOTE

Needed to maintain backwards compatibility

## 7.2. Frame Buffer Colormap

### fb\_dealloc\_cmap

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`fb_dealloc_cmap` — deallocate a colormap

#### Synopsis

```
void fb_dealloc_cmap (struct fb_cmap * cmap);
```

#### Arguments

*cmap*

frame buffer colormap structure

## Description

Deallocates a colormap that was previously allocated with `fb_alloc_cmap`.

# fb\_copy\_cmap

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_copy_cmap` — copy a colormap

## Synopsis

```
int fb_copy_cmap (const struct fb_cmap * from, struct fb_cmap  
* to);
```

## Arguments

*from*

frame buffer colormap structure

*to*

frame buffer colormap structure

## Description

Copy contents of colormap from *from* to *to*.

# fb\_set\_cmap

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`fb_set_cmap` — set the colormap

### Synopsis

```
int fb_set_cmap (struct fb_cmap * cmap, struct fb_info *  
info);
```

### Arguments

*cmap*

frame buffer colormap structure

*info*

frame buffer info structure

### Description

Sets the colormap *cmap* for a screen of device *info*.

Returns negative `errno` on error, or zero on success.

# fb\_default\_cmap

## LINUX

## Name

`fb_default_cmap` — get default colormap

## Synopsis

```
const struct fb_cmap * fb_default_cmap (int len);
```

## Arguments

*len*

size of palette for a depth

## Description

Gets the default colormap for a specific screen depth. *len* is the size of the palette for a particular screen depth.

Returns pointer to a frame buffer colormap structure.

# fb\_invert\_cmaps

## LINUX

## Name

`fb_invert_cmaps` — invert all defaults colormaps



## Synopsis

```
void fb_invert_cmaps ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Invert all default colormaps.

# 7.3. Frame Buffer Video Mode Database

## fb\_try\_mode

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_try_mode` — test a video mode

## Synopsis

```
int fb_try_mode (struct fb_var_screeninfo * var, struct  
fb_info * info, const struct fb_videomode * mode, unsigned int
```

```
    bpp) ;
```

## Arguments

*var*

frame buffer user defined part of display

*info*

frame buffer info structure

*mode*

frame buffer video mode structure

*bpp*

color depth in bits per pixel

## Description

Tries a video mode to test it's validity for device *info*.

Returns 1 on success.

# fb\_delete\_videomode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

fb\_delete\_videomode — removed videomode entry from modelist

## Synopsis

```
void fb_delete_videomode (const struct fb_videomode * mode,
struct list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*mode*

videomode to remove

*head*

struct list\_head of modelist

## NOTES

Will remove all matching mode entries

## fb\_find\_mode

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_find_mode` — finds a valid video mode

## Synopsis

```
int fb_find_mode (struct fb_var_screeninfo * var, struct
fb_info * info, const char * mode_option, const struct
```

```
fb_videomode * db, unsigned int dbsize, const struct  
fb_videomode * default_mode, unsigned int default_bpp);
```

## Arguments

*var*

frame buffer user defined part of display

*info*

frame buffer info structure

*mode\_option*

string video mode to find

*db*

video mode database

*dbsize*

size of *db*

*default\_mode*

default video mode to fall back to

*default\_bpp*

default color depth in bits per pixel

## Description

Finds a suitable video mode, starting with the specified mode in *mode\_option* with fallback to *default\_mode*. If *default\_mode* fails, all modes in the video mode database will be tried.

Valid mode specifiers for *mode\_option*:

```
<xres>x<yres>[M][R][-<bpp>][@<refresh>][i][m] or  
<name>[-<bpp>][@<refresh>]
```

with <xres>, <yres>, <bpp> and <refresh> decimal numbers and <name> a string.

If 'M' is present after yres (and before refresh/bpp if present), the function will compute the timings using VESA(tm) Coordinated Video Timings (CVT). If 'R' is present after 'M', will compute with reduced blanking (for flatpanels). If 'i' is present, compute interlaced mode. If 'm' is present, add margins equal to 1.8% of xres rounded down to 8 pixels, and 1.8% of yres. The char 'i' and 'm' must be after 'M' and 'R'. Example:

1024x768MR-860m - Reduced blank with margins at 60Hz.

## NOTE

The passed struct *var* is *\_not\_* cleared! This allows you to supply values for e.g. the grayscale and accel\_flags fields.

Returns zero for failure, 1 if using specified *mode\_option*, 2 if using specified *mode\_option* with an ignored refresh rate, 3 if default mode is used, 4 if fall back to any valid mode.

## fb\_var\_to\_videomode

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`fb_var_to_videomode` — convert `fb_var_screeninfo` to `fb_videomode`

### Synopsis

```
void fb_var_to_videomode (struct fb_videomode * mode, const
struct fb_var_screeninfo * var);
```

## Arguments

*mode*

pointer to struct fb\_videomode

*var*

pointer to struct fb\_var\_screeninfo

## fb\_videomode\_to\_var

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_videomode_to_var` — convert `fb_videomode` to `fb_var_screeninfo`

## Synopsis

```
void fb_videomode_to_var (struct fb_var_screeninfo * var,  
const struct fb_videomode * mode);
```

## Arguments

*var*

pointer to struct fb\_var\_screeninfo

*mode*

pointer to struct fb\_videomode

# fb\_mode\_is\_equal

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`fb_mode_is_equal` — compare 2 videomodes

### Synopsis

```
int fb_mode_is_equal (const struct fb_videomode * mode1, const
struct fb_videomode * mode2);
```

### Arguments

*mode1*

first videomode

*mode2*

second videomode

### RETURNS

1 if equal, 0 if not

# fb\_find\_best\_mode

## LINUX

## Name

`fb_find_best_mode` — find best matching videomode

## Synopsis

```
const struct fb_videomode * fb_find_best_mode (const struct
fb_var_screeninfo * var, struct list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*var*

pointer to struct `fb_var_screeninfo`

*head*

pointer to struct `list_head` of modelist

## RETURNS

struct `fb_videomode`, NULL if none found

## IMPORTANT

This function assumes that all modelist entries in `info->modelist` are valid.

## NOTES

Finds best matching videomode which has an equal or greater dimension than `var->xres` and `var->yres`. If more than 1 videomode is found, will return the videomode with the highest refresh rate



# fb\_find\_nearest\_mode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`fb_find_nearest_mode` — find closest videomode

### Synopsis

```
const struct fb_videomode * fb_find_nearest_mode (const struct
fb_videomode * mode, struct list_head * head);
```

### Arguments

*mode*

pointer to struct `fb_videomode`

*head*

pointer to modelist

### Description

Finds best matching videomode, smaller or greater in dimension. If more than 1 videomode is found, will return the videomode with the closest refresh rate.

# fb\_match\_mode

## LINUX

## Name

`fb_match_mode` — find a videomode which exactly matches the timings in `var`

## Synopsis

```
const struct fb_videomode * fb_match_mode (const struct
fb_var_screeninfo * var, struct list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*var*

pointer to struct `fb_var_screeninfo`

*head*

pointer to struct `list_head` of modelist

## RETURNS

struct `fb_videomode`, NULL if none found

# fb\_add\_videomode

## LINUX

## Name

`fb_add_videomode` — adds videomode entry to modelist

## Synopsis

```
int fb_add_videomode (const struct fb_videomode * mode, struct
list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*mode*

videomode to add

*head*

struct list\_head of modelist

## NOTES

Will only add unmatched mode entries

## fb\_destroy\_modelist

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`fb_destroy_modelist` — destroy modelist

## Synopsis

```
void fb_destroy_modelist (struct list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*head*

struct list\_head of modelist

# fb\_videomode\_to\_modelist

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

fb\_videomode\_to\_modelist — convert mode array to mode list

## Synopsis

```
void fb_videomode_to_modelist (const struct fb_videomode *  
modedb, int num, struct list_head * head);
```

## Arguments

*modedb*

array of struct fb\_videomode

*num*

number of entries in array

*head*

struct list\_head of modelist

## 7.4. Frame Buffer Macintosh Video Mode Database

### mac\_vmode\_to\_var

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`mac_vmode_to_var` — converts vmode/cmode pair to var structure

#### Synopsis

```
int mac_vmode_to_var (int vmode, int cmode, struct
fb_var_screeninfo * var);
```

#### Arguments

*vmode*

MacOS video mode

*cmode*

MacOS color mode

*var*

frame buffer video mode structure

#### Description

Converts a MacOS vmode/cmode pair to a frame buffer video mode structure.

Returns negative errno on error, or zero for success.

## mac\_map\_monitor\_sense

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`mac_map_monitor_sense` — Convert monitor sense to vmode

### Synopsis

```
int mac_map_monitor_sense (int sense);
```

### Arguments

*sense*

Macintosh monitor sense number

### Description

Converts a Macintosh monitor sense number to a MacOS vmode number.

Returns MacOS vmode video mode number.

## mac\_find\_mode

### LINUX

## Name

`mac_find_mode` — find a video mode

## Synopsis

```
int mac_find_mode (struct fb_var_screeninfo * var, struct
fb_info * info, const char * mode_option, unsigned int
default_bpp);
```

## Arguments

*var*

frame buffer user defined part of display

*info*

frame buffer info structure

*mode\_option*

video mode name (see `mac_modedb[]`)

*default\_bpp*

default color depth in bits per pixel

## Description

Finds a suitable video mode. Tries to set mode specified by *mode\_option*. If the name of the wanted mode begins with 'mac', the Mac video mode database will be used, otherwise it will fall back to the standard video mode database.

## Note

Function marked as `__init` and can only be used during system boot.

Returns error code from `fb_find_mode` (see `fb_find_mode` function).

## **7.5. Frame Buffer Fonts**

Refer to the file `drivers/video/console/fonts.c` for more information.



# Chapter 8. Input Subsystem

## 8.1. Input core

### struct input\_absinfo

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

struct input\_absinfo — used by EVIOCGABS/EVIOCSABS ioctls

#### Synopsis

```
struct input_absinfo {
    __s32 value;
    __s32 minimum;
    __s32 maximum;
    __s32 fuzz;
    __s32 flat;
    __s32 resolution;
};
```

#### Members

value

latest reported value for the axis.

minimum

specifies minimum value for the axis.

maximum

specifies maximum value for the axis.

fuzz

specifies fuzz value that is used to filter noise from the event stream.

flat

values that are within this value will be discarded by joydev interface and reported as 0 instead.

resolution

specifies resolution for the values reported for the axis.

## Description

Note that input core does not clamp reported values to the [minimum, maximum] limits, such task is left to userspace.

Resolution for main axes (ABS\_X, ABS\_Y, ABS\_Z) is reported in units per millimeter (units/mm), resolution for rotational axes (ABS\_RX, ABS\_RY, ABS\_RZ) is reported in units per radian.

# struct input\_keymap\_entry

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct input\_keymap\_entry — used by EVIOCGKEYCODE/EVIOCSKEYCODE ioctls

## Synopsis

```
struct input_keymap_entry {  
#define INPUT_KEYMAP_BY_INDEX (1 << 0)  
    __u8 flags;  
    __u8 len;  
    __u16 index;  
    __u32 keycode;
```

```
__u8 scancode[32];
};
```

## Members

flags

allows to specify how kernel should handle the request. For example, setting INPUT\_KEYMAP\_BY\_INDEX flag indicates that kernel should perform lookup in keymap by *index* instead of *scancode*

len

length of the scancode that resides in *scancode* buffer.

index

index in the keymap, may be used instead of scancode

keycode

key code assigned to this scancode

scancode[32]

scancode represented in machine-endian form.

## Description

The structure is used to retrieve and modify keymap data. Users have option of performing lookup either by *scancode* itself or by *index* in keymap entry. EVIOCGKEYCODE will also return scancode or index (depending on which element was used to perform lookup).

## struct ff\_replay

**LINUX**

## Name

`struct ff_replay` — defines scheduling of the force-feedback effect

## Synopsis

```
struct ff_replay {
    __u16 length;
    __u16 delay;
};
```

## Members

`length`

duration of the effect

`delay`

delay before effect should start playing

# struct ff\_trigger

## LINUX

## Name

`struct ff_trigger` — defines what triggers the force-feedback effect

## Synopsis

```
struct ff_trigger {
    __u16 button;
```

```

    __u16 interval;
};

```

## Members

button

number of the button triggering the effect

interval

controls how soon the effect can be re-triggered

## struct ff\_envelope

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct ff\_envelope — generic force-feedback effect envelope

## Synopsis

```

struct ff_envelope {
    __u16 attack_length;
    __u16 attack_level;
    __u16 fade_length;
    __u16 fade_level;
};

```

## Members

attack\_length

duration of the attack (ms)

`attack_level`

level at the beginning of the attack

`fade_length`

duration of fade (ms)

`fade_level`

level at the end of fade

## Description

The *attack\_level* and *fade\_level* are absolute values; when applying envelope force-feedback core will convert to positive/negative value based on polarity of the default level of the effect. Valid range for the attack and fade levels is 0x0000 - 0x7fff

## struct ff\_constant\_effect

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct ff_constant_effect` — defines parameters of a constant force-feedback effect

### Synopsis

```
struct ff_constant_effect {
    __s16 level;
    struct ff_envelope envelope;
};
```

## Members

level

strength of the effect; may be negative

envelope

envelope data

## struct ff\_ramp\_effect

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct ff\_ramp\_effect — defines parameters of a ramp force-feedback effect

## Synopsis

```
struct ff_ramp_effect {  
    __s16 start_level;  
    __s16 end_level;  
    struct ff_envelope envelope;  
};
```

## Members

start\_level

beginning strength of the effect; may be negative

end\_level

final strength of the effect; may be negative

envelope

envelope data

## struct ff\_condition\_effect

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

struct ff\_condition\_effect — defines a spring or friction force-feedback effect

### Synopsis

```
struct ff_condition_effect {
    __u16 right_saturation;
    __u16 left_saturation;
    __s16 right_coeff;
    __s16 left_coeff;
    __u16 deadband;
    __s16 center;
};
```

### Members

right\_saturation

maximum level when joystick moved all way to the right

left\_saturation

same for the left side

right\_coeff

controls how fast the force grows when the joystick moves to the right



`left_coeff`

same for the left side

`deadband`

size of the dead zone, where no force is produced

`center`

position of the dead zone

## struct `ff_periodic_effect`

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct ff_periodic_effect` — defines parameters of a periodic force-feedback effect

### Synopsis

```
struct ff_periodic_effect {
    __u16 waveform;
    __u16 period;
    __s16 magnitude;
    __s16 offset;
    __u16 phase;
    struct ff_envelope envelope;
    __u32 custom_len;
    __s16 __user * custom_data;
};
```

## Members

waveform

kind of the effect (wave)

period

period of the wave (ms)

magnitude

peak value

offset

mean value of the wave (roughly)

phase

'horizontal' shift

envelope

envelope data

custom\_len

number of samples (FF\_CUSTOM only)

custom\_data

buffer of samples (FF\_CUSTOM only)

## Description

Known waveforms - FF\_SQUARE, FF\_TRIANGLE, FF\_SINE, FF\_SAW\_UP, FF\_SAW\_DOWN, FF\_CUSTOM. The exact syntax FF\_CUSTOM is undefined for the time being as no driver supports it yet.

## Note

the data pointed by custom\_data is copied by the driver. You can therefore dispose of the memory after the upload/update.

# struct ff\_rumble\_effect

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

struct ff\_rumble\_effect — defines parameters of a periodic force-feedback effect

### Synopsis

```
struct ff_rumble_effect {
    __u16 strong_magnitude;
    __u16 weak_magnitude;
};
```

### Members

strong\_magnitude

magnitude of the heavy motor

weak\_magnitude

magnitude of the light one

### Description

Some rumble pads have two motors of different weight. Strong\_magnitude represents the magnitude of the vibration generated by the heavy one.

# struct ff\_effect

## LINUX

## Name

`struct ff_effect` — defines force feedback effect

## Synopsis

```
struct ff_effect {
    __u16 type;
    __s16 id;
    __u16 direction;
    struct ff_trigger trigger;
    struct ff_replay replay;
    union u;
};
```

## Members

`type`

type of the effect (FF\_CONSTANT, FF\_PERIODIC, FF\_RAMP, FF\_SPRING, FF\_FRICTION, FF\_DAMPER, FF\_RUMBLE, FF\_INERTIA, or FF\_CUSTOM)

`id`

an unique id assigned to an effect

`direction`

direction of the effect

`trigger`

trigger conditions (struct ff\_trigger)

`replay`

scheduling of the effect (struct ff\_replay)

u

effect-specific structure (one of `ff_constant_effect`, `ff_ramp_effect`, `ff_periodic_effect`, `ff_condition_effect`, `ff_rumble_effect`) further defining effect parameters

## Description

This structure is sent through `ioctl` from the application to the driver. To create a new effect application should set its `id` to -1; the kernel will return assigned `id` which can later be used to update or delete this effect.

## Direction of the effect is encoded as follows

0 deg -> 0x0000 (down) 90 deg -> 0x4000 (left) 180 deg -> 0x8000 (up) 270 deg -> 0xC000 (right)

## struct input\_dev

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`struct input_dev` — represents an input device

## Synopsis

```
struct input_dev {
    const char * name;
    const char * phys;
    const char * uniq;
    struct input_id id;
    unsigned long propbit[BITS_TO_LONGS(INPUT_PROP_CNT)];
    unsigned long evbit[BITS_TO_LONGS(EV_CNT)];
    unsigned long keybit[BITS_TO_LONGS(KEY_CNT)];
    unsigned long relbit[BITS_TO_LONGS(REL_CNT)];
```

```
    unsigned long absbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (ABS_CNT)];
    unsigned long mscbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (MSC_CNT)];
    unsigned long ledbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (LED_CNT)];
    unsigned long sndbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (SND_CNT)];
    unsigned long ffbbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (FF_CNT)];
    unsigned long swbit[BITS_TO_LONGS (SW_CNT)];
    unsigned int hint_events_per_packet;
    unsigned int keycodemax;
    unsigned int keycodesize;
    void * keycode;
    int (* setkeycode) (struct input_dev *dev, const struct input_keymap_entry *keymap_entry);
    int (* getkeycode) (struct input_dev *dev, struct input_keymap_entry *keymap_entry);
    struct ff_device * ff;
    unsigned int repeat_key;
    struct timer_list timer;
    int rep[REP_CNT];
    struct input_mt_slot * mt;
    int mtsize;
    int slot;
    int trkid;
    struct input_absinfo * absinfo;
    unsigned long key[BITS_TO_LONGS (KEY_CNT)];
    unsigned long led[BITS_TO_LONGS (LED_CNT)];
    unsigned long snd[BITS_TO_LONGS (SND_CNT)];
    unsigned long sw[BITS_TO_LONGS (SW_CNT)];
    int (* open) (struct input_dev *dev);
    void (* close) (struct input_dev *dev);
    int (* flush) (struct input_dev *dev, struct file *file);
    int (* event) (struct input_dev *dev, unsigned int type, unsigned int code, int value);
    struct input_handle __rcu * grab;
    spinlock_t event_lock;
    struct mutex mutex;
    unsigned int users;
    bool going_away;
    bool sync;
    struct device dev;
    struct list_head h_list;
    struct list_head node;
};
```

## Members

name

name of the device

phys

physical path to the device in the system hierarchy

uniq

unique identification code for the device (if device has it)

id

id of the device (struct input\_id)

propbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(INPUT\_PROP\_CNT)]

bitmap of device properties and quirks

evbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(EV\_CNT)]

bitmap of types of events supported by the device (EV\_KEY, EV\_REL, etc.)

keybit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(KEY\_CNT)]

bitmap of keys/buttons this device has

relbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(REL\_CNT)]

bitmap of relative axes for the device

absbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(ABS\_CNT)]

bitmap of absolute axes for the device

mscbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(MSC\_CNT)]

bitmap of miscellaneous events supported by the device

ledbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(LED\_CNT)]

bitmap of leds present on the device

sndbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(SND\_CNT)]

bitmap of sound effects supported by the device

ffbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(FF\_CNT)]

bitmap of force feedback effects supported by the device

swbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(SW\_CNT)]

bitmap of switches present on the device

hint\_events\_per\_packet

average number of events generated by the device in a packet (between EV\_SYN/SYN\_REPORT events). Used by event handlers to estimate size of the buffer needed to hold events.

keycodemax

size of keycode table

keycodesize

size of elements in keycode table

keycode

map of scancodes to keycodes for this device

setkeycode

optional method to alter current keymap, used to implement sparse keymaps. If not supplied default mechanism will be used. The method is being called while holding event\_lock and thus must not sleep

getkeycode

optional legacy method to retrieve current keymap.

ff

force feedback structure associated with the device if device supports force feedback effects

repeat\_key

stores key code of the last key pressed; used to implement software autorepeat

timer

timer for software autorepeat

rep[REP\_CNT]

current values for autorepeat parameters (delay, rate)

mt

pointer to array of struct input\_mt\_slot holding current values of tracked contacts

mtsize

number of MT slots the device uses



slot

MT slot currently being transmitted

trkid

stores MT tracking ID for the current contact

absinfo

array of struct `input_absinfo` elements holding information about absolute axes (current value, min, max, flat, fuzz, resolution)

`key[BITS_TO_LONGS(KEY_CNT)]`

reflects current state of device's keys/buttons

`led[BITS_TO_LONGS(LED_CNT)]`

reflects current state of device's LEDs

`snd[BITS_TO_LONGS(SND_CNT)]`

reflects current state of sound effects

`sw[BITS_TO_LONGS(SW_CNT)]`

reflects current state of device's switches

open

this method is called when the very first user calls `input_open_device`. The driver must prepare the device to start generating events (start polling thread, request an IRQ, submit URB, etc.)

close

this method is called when the very last user calls `input_close_device`.

flush

purges the device. Most commonly used to get rid of force feedback effects loaded into the device when disconnecting from it

event

event handler for events sent `_to_` the device, like `EV_LED` or `EV_SND`. The device is expected to carry out the requested action (turn on a LED, play sound, etc.) The call is protected by `event_lock` and must not sleep

`grab`

input handle that currently has the device grabbed (via `EVIOCGRAB` ioctl). When a handle grabs a device it becomes sole recipient for all input events coming from the device

`event_lock`

this spinlock is taken when input core receives and processes a new event for the device (in `input_event`). Code that accesses and/or modifies parameters of a device (such as keymap or `absmin`, `absmax`, `absfuzz`, etc.) after device has been registered with input core must take this lock.

`mutex`

serializes calls to `open`, `close` and `flush` methods

`users`

stores number of users (input handlers) that opened this device. It is used by `input_open_device` and `input_close_device` to make sure that `dev->open` is only called when the first user opens device and `dev->close` is called when the very last user closes the device

`going_away`

marks devices that are in a middle of unregistering and causes `input_open_device*()` fail with `-ENODEV`.

`sync`

set to `true` when there were no new events since last `EV_SYN`

`dev`

driver model's view of this device

`h_list`

list of input handles associated with the device. When accessing the list `dev->mutex` must be held

`node`

used to place the device onto `input_dev_list`

# struct input\_handler

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct input\_handler — implements one of interfaces for input devices

## Synopsis

```
struct input_handler {
    void * private;
    void (* event) (struct input_handle *handle, unsigned int type, unsigned int value);
    bool (* filter) (struct input_handle *handle, unsigned int type, unsigned int value);
    bool (* match) (struct input_handler *handler, struct input_dev *dev);
    int (* connect) (struct input_handler *handler, struct input_dev *dev, const char *name);
    void (* disconnect) (struct input_handle *handle);
    void (* start) (struct input_handle *handle);
    const struct file_operations * fops;
    int minor;
    const char * name;
    const struct input_device_id * id_table;
    struct list_head h_list;
    struct list_head node;
};
```

## Members

private

driver-specific data

event

event handler. This method is being called by input core with interrupts disabled and dev->event\_lock spinlock held and so it may not sleep

filter

similar to *event*; separates normal event handlers from “filters”.

`match`

called after comparing device's `id` with handler's `id_table` to perform fine-grained matching between device and handler

`connect`

called when attaching a handler to an input device

`disconnect`

disconnects a handler from input device

`start`

starts handler for given handle. This function is called by input core right after `connect` method and also when a process that “grabbed” a device releases it

`fops`

file operations this driver implements

`minor`

beginning of range of 32 minors for devices this driver can provide

`name`

name of the handler, to be shown in `/proc/bus/input/handlers`

`id_table`

pointer to a table of `input_device_ids` this driver can handle

`h_list`

list of input handles associated with the handler

`node`

for placing the driver onto `input_handler_list`

## Description

Input handlers attach to input devices and create input handles. There are likely several handlers attached to any given input device at the same time. All of them will get their copy of input event generated by the device.

The very same structure is used to implement input filters. Input core allows filters to run first and will not pass event to regular handlers if any of the filters indicate that the event should be filtered (by returning `true` from their `filter` method).

Note that input core serializes calls to `connect` and `disconnect` methods.

# struct input\_handle

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`struct input_handle` — links input device with an input handler

## Synopsis

```
struct input_handle {
    void * private;
    int open;
    const char * name;
    struct input_dev * dev;
    struct input_handler * handler;
    struct list_head d_node;
    struct list_head h_node;
};
```

## Members

`private`

handler-specific data

`open`

counter showing whether the handle is 'open', i.e. should deliver events from its device

`name`

name given to the handle by handler that created it

*dev*

input device the handle is attached to

*handler*

handler that works with the device through this handle

*d\_node*

used to put the handle on device's list of attached handles

*h\_node*

used to put the handle on handler's list of handles from which it gets events

## input\_set\_events\_per\_packet

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_set_events_per_packet` — tell handlers about the driver event rate

### Synopsis

```
void input_set_events_per_packet (struct input_dev * dev, int  
n_events);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

the input device used by the driver

*n\_events*the average number of events between calls to `input_sync`

## Description

If the event rate sent from a device is unusually large, use this function to set the expected event rate. This will allow handlers to set up an appropriate buffer size for the event stream, in order to minimize information loss.

## struct ff\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`struct ff_device` — force-feedback part of an input device

## Synopsis

```
struct ff_device {
    int (* upload) (struct input_dev *dev, struct ff_effect *effect, struct :
    int (* erase) (struct input_dev *dev, int effect_id);
    int (* playback) (struct input_dev *dev, int effect_id, int value);
    void (* set_gain) (struct input_dev *dev, u16 gain);
    void (* set_autocenter) (struct input_dev *dev, u16 magnitude);
    void (* destroy) (struct ff_device *);
    void * private;
    unsigned long ffbits[BITS_TO_LONGS(FF_CNT)];
    struct mutex mutex;
    int max_effects;
    struct ff_effect * effects;
    struct file * effect_owners[];
};
```

## Members

upload

Called to upload an new effect into device

erase

Called to erase an effect from device

playback

Called to request device to start playing specified effect

set\_gain

Called to set specified gain

set\_autocenter

Called to auto-center device

destroy

called by input core when parent input device is being destroyed

private

driver-specific data, will be freed automatically

ffbit[BITS\_TO\_LONGS(FF\_CNT)]

bitmap of force feedback capabilities truly supported by device (not emulated like ones in input\_dev->ffbit)

mutex

mutex for serializing access to the device

max\_effects

maximum number of effects supported by device

effects

pointer to an array of effects currently loaded into device

effect\_owners[]

array of effect owners; when file handle owning an effect gets closed the effect is automatically erased



## Description

Every force-feedback device must implement `upload` and `playback` methods; `erase` is optional. `set_gain` and `set_autocenter` need only be implemented if driver sets up `FF_GAIN` and `FF_AUTOCENTER` bits.

Note that `playback`, `set_gain` and `set_autocenter` are called with `dev->event_lock` spinlock held and interrupts off and thus may not sleep.

## input\_event

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_event` — report new input event

### Synopsis

```
void input_event (struct input_dev * dev, unsigned int type,
unsigned int code, int value);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

device that generated the event

*type*

type of the event

*code*

event code

*value*

value of the event

## Description

This function should be used by drivers implementing various input devices to report input events. See also `input_inject_event`.

## NOTE

`input_event` may be safely used right after input device was allocated with `input_allocate_device`, even before it is registered with `input_register_device`, but the event will not reach any of the input handlers. Such early invocation of `input_event` may be used to 'seed' initial state of a switch or initial position of absolute axis, etc.

# input\_inject\_event

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_inject_event` — send input event from input handler

## Synopsis

```
void input_inject_event (struct input_handle * handle,  
unsigned int type, unsigned int code, int value);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

input handle to send event through

*type*

type of the event

*code*

event code

*value*

value of the event

## Description

Similar to `input_event` but will ignore event if device is “grabbed” and handle injecting event is not the one that owns the device.

# input\_alloc\_absinfo

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_alloc_absinfo` — allocates array of `input_absinfo` structs

## Synopsis

```
void input_alloc_absinfo (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

the input device emitting absolute events

## Description

If the `absinfo` struct the caller asked for is already allocated, this functions will not do anything.

# input\_grab\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_grab_device` — grabs device for exclusive use

## Synopsis

```
int input_grab_device (struct input_handle * handle);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

input handle that wants to own the device

## Description

When a device is grabbed by an input handle all events generated by the device are delivered only to this handle. Also events injected by other input handles are ignored while device is grabbed.

# input\_release\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_release_device` — release previously grabbed device

## Synopsis

```
void input_release_device (struct input_handle * handle);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

input handle that owns the device

## Description

Releases previously grabbed device so that other input handles can start receiving input events. Upon release all handlers attached to the device have their `start` method called so they have a change to synchronize device state with the rest of the system.

# input\_open\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_open_device` — open input device

### Synopsis

```
int input_open_device (struct input_handle * handle);
```

### Arguments

*handle*

handle through which device is being accessed

### Description

This function should be called by input handlers when they want to start receive events from given input device.

# input\_close\_device

## LINUX

## Name

`input_close_device` — close input device

## Synopsis

```
void input_close_device (struct input_handle * handle);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

handle through which device is being accessed

## Description

This function should be called by input handlers when they want to stop receive events from given input device.

# input\_scancode\_to\_scalar

## LINUX

## Name

`input_scancode_to_scalar` — converts scancode in struct `input_keymap_entry`

## Synopsis

```
int input_scancode_to_scalar (const struct input_keymap_entry  
* ke, unsigned int * scancode);
```

## Arguments

*ke*

keymap entry containing scancode to be converted.

*scancode*

pointer to the location where converted scancode should be stored.

## Description

This function is used to convert scancode stored in struct `keymap_entry` into scalar form understood by legacy keymap handling methods. These methods expect scancodes to be represented as 'unsigned int'.

# input\_get\_keycode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_get_keycode` — retrieve keycode currently mapped to a given scancode



## Synopsis

```
int input_get_keycode (struct input_dev * dev, struct
input_keymap_entry * ke);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device which keymap is being queried

*ke*

keymap entry

## Description

This function should be called by anyone interested in retrieving current keymap. Presently evdev handlers use it.

# input\_set\_keycode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_set_keycode` — attribute a keycode to a given scancode

## Synopsis

```
int input_set_keycode (struct input_dev * dev, const struct
input_keymap_entry * ke);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device which keymap is being updated

*ke*

new keymap entry

## Description

This function should be called by anyone needing to update current keymap. Presently keyboard and evdev handlers use it.

# input\_reset\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_reset_device` — reset/restore the state of input device

## Synopsis

```
void input_reset_device (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device whose state needs to be reset

## Description

This function tries to reset the state of an opened input device and bring internal state and state of the hardware in sync with each other. We mark all keys as released, restore LED state, repeat rate, etc.

# input\_allocate\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_allocate_device` — allocate memory for new input device

## Synopsis

```
struct input_dev * input_allocate_device ( void );
```

## Arguments

*void*

no arguments

## Description

Returns prepared struct `input_dev` or `NULL`.

## NOTE

Use `input_free_device` to free devices that have not been registered; `input_unregister_device` should be used for already registered devices.

# input\_free\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_free_device` — free memory occupied by `input_dev` structure

## Synopsis

```
void input_free_device (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device to free

## Description

This function should only be used if `input_register_device` was not called yet or if it failed. Once device was registered use `input_unregister_device` and memory will be freed once last reference to the device is dropped.

Device should be allocated by `input_allocate_device`.

## NOTE

If there are references to the input device then memory will not be freed until last reference is dropped.

# input\_set\_capability

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_set_capability` — mark device as capable of a certain event

## Synopsis

```
void input_set_capability (struct input_dev * dev, unsigned
int type, unsigned int code);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device that is capable of emitting or accepting event

*type*

type of the event (EV\_KEY, EV\_REL, etc...)

*code*

event code

## Description

In addition to setting up corresponding bit in appropriate capability bitmap the function also adjusts dev->evbit.

# input\_register\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_register_device` — register device with input core

## Synopsis

```
int input_register_device (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to be registered

## Description

This function registers device with input core. The device must be allocated with `input_allocate_device` and all it's capabilities set up before registering. If function fails the device must be freed with `input_free_device`. Once device has been successfully registered it can be unregistered with `input_unregister_device`; `input_free_device` should not be called in this case.

# input\_unregister\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_unregister_device` — unregister previously registered device

## Synopsis

```
void input_unregister_device (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to be unregistered

## Description

This function unregisters an input device. Once device is unregistered the caller should not try to access it as it may get freed at any moment.

# input\_register\_handler

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_register_handler` — register a new input handler

## Synopsis

```
int input_register_handler (struct input_handler * handler);
```

## Arguments

*handler*

handler to be registered

## Description

This function registers a new input handler (interface) for input devices in the system and attaches it to all input devices that are compatible with the handler.

# input\_unregister\_handler

**LINUX**



## Name

`input_unregister_handler` — unregisters an input handler

## Synopsis

```
void input_unregister_handler (struct input_handler *  
    handler);
```

## Arguments

*handler*

handler to be unregistered

## Description

This function disconnects a handler from its input devices and removes it from lists of known handlers.

# input\_handler\_for\_each\_handle

## LINUX

## Name

`input_handler_for_each_handle` — handle iterator

## Synopsis

```
int input_handler_for_each_handle (struct input_handler *  
handler, void * data, int (*fn) (struct input_handle *, void  
*)) ;
```

## Arguments

*handler*

input handler to iterate

*data*

data for the callback

*fn*

function to be called for each handle

## Description

Iterate over *bus*'s list of devices, and call *fn* for each, passing it *data* and stop when *fn* returns a non-zero value. The function is using RCU to traverse the list and therefore may be used in atonic contexts. The *fn* callback is invoked from RCU critical section and thus must not sleep.

## input\_register\_handle

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_register_handle` — register a new input handle

## Synopsis

```
int input_register_handle (struct input_handle * handle);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

handle to register

## Description

This function puts a new input handle onto device's and handler's lists so that events can flow through it once it is opened using `input_open_device`.

This function is supposed to be called from handler's `connect` method.

# input\_unregister\_handle

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_unregister_handle` — unregister an input handle

## Synopsis

```
void input_unregister_handle (struct input_handle * handle);
```

## Arguments

*handle*

handle to unregister

## Description

This function removes input handle from device's and handler's lists.

This function is supposed to be called from handler's `disconnect` method.

# input\_ff\_upload

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_ff_upload` — upload effect into force-feedback device

## Synopsis

```
int input_ff_upload (struct input_dev * dev, struct ff_effect  
* effect, struct file * file);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device

*effect*

effect to be uploaded

*file*

owner of the effect

## input\_ff\_erase

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_ff_erase` — erase a force-feedback effect from device

### Synopsis

```
int input_ff_erase (struct input_dev * dev, int effect_id,
struct file * file);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

input device to erase effect from

*effect\_id*

id of the ffect to be erased

*file*

purported owner of the request

## Description

This function erases a force-feedback effect from specified device. The effect will only be erased if it was uploaded through the same file handle that is requesting erase.

## input\_ff\_event

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_ff_event` — generic handler for force-feedback events

## Synopsis

```
int input_ff_event (struct input_dev * dev, unsigned int type,
unsigned int code, int value);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device to send the effect to

*type*

event type (anything but EV\_FF is ignored)

*code*

event code

*value*

event value

# input\_ff\_create

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_ff_create` — create force-feedback device

### Synopsis

```
int input_ff_create (struct input_dev * dev, int max_effects);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

input device supporting force-feedback

*max\_effects*

maximum number of effects supported by the device

### Description

This function allocates all necessary memory for a force feedback portion of an input device and installs all default handlers. `dev->ffbit` should be already set up before calling this function. Once ff device is created you need to setup its upload, erase, playback and other handlers before registering input device

# input\_ff\_destroy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_ff_destroy` — frees force feedback portion of input device

### Synopsis

```
void input_ff_destroy (struct input_dev * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

input device supporting force feedback

### Description

This function is only needed in error path as input core will automatically free force feedback structures when device is destroyed.

# input\_ff\_create\_memless

## LINUX



## Name

`input_ff_create_memless` — create memoryless force-feedback device

## Synopsis

```
int input_ff_create_memless (struct input_dev * dev, void *  
data, int (*play_effect) (struct input_dev *, void *, struct  
ff_effect *));
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device supporting force-feedback

*data*

driver-specific data to be passed into *play\_effect*

*play\_effect*

driver-specific method for playing FF effect

## 8.2. Multitouch Library

### struct input\_mt\_slot

**LINUX**

## Name

`struct input_mt_slot` — represents the state of an input MT slot

## Synopsis

```
struct input_mt_slot {  
    int abs[ABS_MT_LAST - ABS_MT_FIRST + 1];  
};
```

## Members

`abs[ABS_MT_LAST - ABS_MT_FIRST + 1]`

holds current values of ABS\_MT axes for this slot

# input\_mt\_init\_slots

## LINUX

## Name

`input_mt_init_slots` — initialize MT input slots

## Synopsis

```
int input_mt_init_slots (struct input_dev * dev, unsigned int  
    num_slots);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device supporting MT events and finger tracking

*num\_slots*

number of slots used by the device

## Description

This function allocates all necessary memory for MT slot handling in the input device, prepares the `ABS_MT_SLOT` and `ABS_MT_TRACKING_ID` events for use and sets up appropriate buffers. May be called repeatedly. Returns `-EINVAL` if attempting to reinitialize with a different number of slots.

# input\_mt\_destroy\_slots

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_mt_destroy_slots` — frees the MT slots of the input device

## Synopsis

```
void input_mt_destroy_slots (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device with allocated MT slots

## Description

This function is only needed in error path as the input core will automatically free the MT slots when the device is destroyed.

# input\_mt\_report\_slot\_state

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_mt_report_slot_state` — report contact state

## Synopsis

```
void input_mt_report_slot_state (struct input_dev * dev,  
unsigned int tool_type, bool active);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device with allocated MT slots

*tool\_type*

the tool type to use in this slot

*active*

true if contact is active, false otherwise

## Description

Reports a contact via ABS\_MT\_TRACKING\_ID, and optionally ABS\_MT\_TOOL\_TYPE. If active is true and the slot is currently inactive, or if the tool type is changed, a new tracking id is assigned to the slot. The tool type is only reported if the corresponding absbit field is set.

# input\_mt\_report\_finger\_count

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_mt_report_finger_count` — report contact count

## Synopsis

```
void input_mt_report_finger_count (struct input_dev * dev, int
count);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device with allocated MT slots

*count*

the number of contacts

## Description

Reports the contact count via `BTN_TOOL_FINGER`, `BTN_TOOL_DOUBLETAP`, `BTN_TOOL_TRIPLETAP` and `BTN_TOOL_QUADTAP`.

The input core ensures only the KEY events already setup for this device will produce output.

# input\_mt\_report\_pointer\_emulation

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_mt_report_pointer_emulation` — common pointer emulation

## Synopsis

```
void input_mt_report_pointer_emulation (struct input_dev *  
dev, bool use_count);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

input device with allocated MT slots

*use\_count*

report number of active contacts as finger count

## Description

Performs legacy pointer emulation via BTN\_TOUCH, ABS\_X, ABS\_Y and ABS\_PRESSURE. Touchpad finger count is emulated if use\_count is true.

The input core ensures only the KEY and ABS axes already setup for this device will produce output.

## 8.3. Polled input devices

### struct input\_polled\_dev

#### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

struct input\_polled\_dev — simple polled input device

#### Synopsis

```
struct input_polled_dev {
    void * private;
    void (* open) (struct input_polled_dev *dev);
    void (* close) (struct input_polled_dev *dev);
    void (* poll) (struct input_polled_dev *dev);
    unsigned int poll_interval;
    unsigned int poll_interval_max;
    unsigned int poll_interval_min;
    struct input_dev * input;
};
```

## Members

`private`

private driver data.

`open`

driver-supplied method that prepares device for polling (enabled the device and maybe flushes device state).

`close`

driver-supplied method that is called when device is no longer being polled. Used to put device into low power mode.

`poll`

driver-supplied method that polls the device and posts input events (mandatory).

`poll_interval`

specifies how often the `poll` method should be called. Defaults to 500 msec unless overridden when registering the device.

`poll_interval_max`

specifies upper bound for the poll interval. Defaults to the initial value of *poll\_interval*.

`poll_interval_min`

specifies lower bound for the poll interval. Defaults to 0.

`input`

input device structure associated with the polled device. Must be properly initialized by the driver (id, name, phys, bits).

## Description

Polled input device provides a skeleton for supporting simple input devices that do not raise interrupts but have to be periodically scanned or polled to detect changes in their state.



# input\_allocate\_polled\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`input_allocate_polled_device` — allocate memory for polled device

### Synopsis

```
struct input_polled_dev * input_allocate_polled_device (  
void);
```

### Arguments

*void*

no arguments

### Description

The function allocates memory for a polled device and also for an input device associated with this polled device.

# input\_free\_polled\_device

## LINUX

## Name

`input_free_polled_device` — free memory allocated for polled device

## Synopsis

```
void input_free_polled_device (struct input_polled_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to free

## Description

The function frees memory allocated for polling device and drops reference to the associated input device.

# input\_register\_polled\_device

## LINUX

## Name

`input_register_polled_device` — register polled device

## Synopsis

```
int input_register_polled_device (struct input_polled_dev *
dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to register

## Description

The function registers previously initialized polled input device with input layer. The device should be allocated with call to `input_allocate_polled_device`. Callers should also set up `poll` method and set up capabilities (id, name, phys, bits) of the corresponding `input_dev` structure.

# input\_unregister\_polled\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`input_unregister_polled_device` — unregister polled device

## Synopsis

```
void input_unregister_polled_device (struct input_polled_dev *
dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

device to unregister

## Description

The function unregisters previously registered polled input device from input layer. Polling is stopped and device is ready to be freed with call to `input_free_polled_device`.

## 8.4. Matrix keyboards/keypads

### struct matrix\_keymap\_data

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct matrix_keymap_data` — keymap for matrix keyboards

### Synopsis

```
struct matrix_keymap_data {  
    const uint32_t * keymap;  
    unsigned int keymap_size;  
};
```

## Members

`keymap`

pointer to array of `uint32` values encoded with `KEY` macro representing keymap

`keymap_size`

number of entries (initialized) in this keymap

## Description

This structure is supposed to be used by platform code to supply keymaps to drivers that implement matrix-like keypads/keyboards.

# struct matrix\_keypad\_platform\_data

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`struct matrix_keypad_platform_data` — platform-dependent keypad data

## Synopsis

```
struct matrix_keypad_platform_data {
    const struct matrix_keymap_data * keymap_data;
    const unsigned int * row_gpios;
    const unsigned int * col_gpios;
    unsigned int num_row_gpios;
    unsigned int num_col_gpios;
    unsigned int col_scan_delay_us;
    unsigned int debounce_ms;
    unsigned int clustered_irq;
    unsigned int clustered_irq_flags;
    bool active_low;
```

```
    bool wakeup;  
    bool no_autorepeat;  
};
```

## Members

keymap\_data

pointer to matrix\_keymap\_data

row\_gpios

pointer to array of gpio numbers representing rows

col\_gpios

pointer to array of gpio numbers representing columns

num\_row\_gpios

actual number of row gpios used by device

num\_col\_gpios

actual number of col gpios used by device

col\_scan\_delay\_us

delay, measured in microseconds, that is needed before we can keypad after activating column gpio

debounce\_ms

debounce interval in milliseconds

clustered\_irq

may be specified if interrupts of all row/column GPIOs are bundled to one single irq

clustered\_irq\_flags

flags that are needed for the clustered irq

active\_low

gpio polarity

wakeup

controls whether the device should be set up as wakeup source

no\_autorepeat

disable key autorepeat

## Description

This structure represents platform-specific data that use used by `matrix_keypad` driver to perform proper initialization.

# matrix\_keypad\_build\_keymap

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`matrix_keypad_build_keymap` — convert platform keymap into matrix keymap

## Synopsis

```
void matrix_keypad_build_keymap (const struct
matrix_keymap_data * keymap_data, unsigned int row_shift,
unsigned short * keymap, unsigned long * keybit);
```

## Arguments

*keymap\_data*

keymap supplied by the platform code

*row\_shift*

number of bits to shift row value by to advance to the next line in the keymap

*keymap*

expanded version of keymap that is suitable for use by matrix keyboard driver

*keybit*

pointer to bitmap of keys supported by input device

## Description

This function converts platform keymap (encoded with `KEY` macro) into an array of keycodes that is suitable for using in a standard matrix keyboard driver that uses row and col as indices.

## 8.5. Sparse keymap support

### struct key\_entry

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct key_entry` — keymap entry for use in sparse keymap

### Synopsis

```
struct key_entry {
    int type;
    u32 code;
    union {unnamed_union};
};
```



## Members

type

Type of the key entry (KE\_KEY, KE\_SW, KE\_VSW, KE\_END); drivers are allowed to extend the list with their own private definitions.

code

Device-specific data identifying the button/switch

{unnamed\_union}

anonymous

## Description

This structure defines an entry in a sparse keymap used by some input devices for which traditional table-based approach is not suitable.

# sparse\_keymap\_entry\_from\_scancode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_entry_from_scancode` — perform sparse keymap lookup

## Synopsis

```
struct key_entry * sparse_keymap_entry_from_scancode (struct
input_dev * dev, unsigned int code);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device using sparse keymap

*code*

Scan code

## Description

This function is used to perform struct `key_entry` lookup in an input device using sparse keymap.

# sparse\_keymap\_entry\_from\_keycode

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_entry_from_keycode` — perform sparse keymap lookup

## Synopsis

```
struct key_entry * sparse_keymap_entry_from_keycode (struct  
input_dev * dev, unsigned int keycode);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device using sparse keymap

*keycode*

Key code

## Description

This function is used to perform struct `key_entry` lookup in an input device using sparse keymap.

# sparse\_keymap\_setup

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_setup` — set up sparse keymap for an input device

## Synopsis

```
int sparse_keymap_setup (struct input_dev * dev, const struct
key_entry * keymap, int (*setup) (struct input_dev *, struct
key_entry *));
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device

*keymap*

Keymap in form of array of `key_entry` structures ending with `KE_END` type entry

*setup*

Function that can be used to adjust keymap entries depending on device's needs, may be `NULL`

## Description

The function calculates size and allocates copy of the original keymap after which sets up input device event bits appropriately. Before destroying input device allocated keymap should be freed with a call to `sparse_keymap_free`.

# sparse\_keymap\_free

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_free` — free memory allocated for sparse keymap

## Synopsis

```
void sparse_keymap_free (struct input_dev * dev);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device using sparse keymap

## Description

This function is used to free memory allocated by sparse keymap in an input device that was set up by `sparse_keymap_setup`.

## NOTE

It is safe to call this function while input device is still registered (however the drivers should care not to try to use freed keymap and thus have to shut off interrupts/polling before freeing the keymap).

# sparse\_keymap\_report\_entry

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_report_entry` — report event corresponding to given key entry

## Synopsis

```
void sparse_keymap_report_entry (struct input_dev * dev, const
struct key_entry * ke, unsigned int value, bool autorelease);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device for which event should be reported

*ke*

key entry describing event

*value*

Value that should be reported (ignored by `KE_SW` entries)

*autorelease*

Signals whether release event should be emitted for `KE_KEY` entries right after reporting press event, ignored by all other entries

## Description

This function is used to report input event described by given struct `key_entry`.

# sparse\_keymap\_report\_event

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`sparse_keymap_report_event` — report event corresponding to given scancode

## Synopsis

```
bool sparse_keymap_report_event (struct input_dev * dev,  
unsigned int code, unsigned int value, bool autorelease);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

Input device using sparse keymap

*code*

Scan code

*value*

Value that should be reported (ignored by `KE_SW` entries)

*autorelease*

Signals whether release event should be emitted for `KE_KEY` entries right after reporting press event, ignored by all other entries

## Description

This function is used to perform lookup in an input device using sparse keymap and report corresponding event. Returns `true` if lookup was successful and `false` otherwise.





# Chapter 9. Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

SPI is the "Serial Peripheral Interface", widely used with embedded systems because it is a simple and efficient interface: basically a multiplexed shift register. Its three signal wires hold a clock (SCK, often in the range of 1-20 MHz), a "Master Out, Slave In" (MOSI) data line, and a "Master In, Slave Out" (MISO) data line. SPI is a full duplex protocol; for each bit shifted out the MOSI line (one per clock) another is shifted in on the MISO line. Those bits are assembled into words of various sizes on the way to and from system memory. An additional chipselect line is usually active-low (nCS); four signals are normally used for each peripheral, plus sometimes an interrupt.

The SPI bus facilities listed here provide a generalized interface to declare SPI busses and devices, manage them according to the standard Linux driver model, and perform input/output operations. At this time, only "master" side interfaces are supported, where Linux talks to SPI peripherals and does not implement such a peripheral itself. (Interfaces to support implementing SPI slaves would necessarily look different.)

The programming interface is structured around two kinds of driver, and two kinds of device. A "Controller Driver" abstracts the controller hardware, which may be as simple as a set of GPIO pins or as complex as a pair of FIFOs connected to dual DMA engines on the other side of the SPI shift register (maximizing throughput). Such drivers bridge between whatever bus they sit on (often the platform bus) and SPI, and expose the SPI side of their device as a struct spi\_master. SPI devices are children of that master, represented as a struct spi\_device and manufactured from struct spi\_board\_info descriptors which are usually provided by board-specific initialization code. A struct spi\_driver is called a "Protocol Driver", and is bound to a spi\_device using normal driver model calls.

The I/O model is a set of queued messages. Protocol drivers submit one or more struct spi\_message objects, which are processed and completed asynchronously. (There are synchronous wrappers, however.) Messages are built from one or more struct spi\_transfer objects, each of which wraps a full duplex SPI transfer. A variety of protocol tweaking options are needed, because different chips adopt very different policies for how they use the bits transferred with SPI.

## struct spi\_device

**LINUX**

## Name

`struct spi_device` — Master side proxy for an SPI slave device

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_device {
    struct device dev;
    struct spi_master * master;
    u32 max_speed_hz;
    u8 chip_select;
    u8 mode;
#define SPI_CPHA 0x01
#define SPI_CPOL 0x02
#define SPI_MODE_0 (0|0)
#define SPI_MODE_1 (0|SPI_CPHA)
#define SPI_MODE_2 (SPI_CPOL|0)
#define SPI_MODE_3 (SPI_CPOL|SPI_CPHA)
#define SPI_CS_HIGH 0x04
#define SPI_LSB_FIRST 0x08
#define SPI_3WIRE 0x10
#define SPI_LOOP 0x20
#define SPI_NO_CS 0x40
#define SPI_READY 0x80
    u8 bits_per_word;
    int irq;
    void * controller_state;
    void * controller_data;
    char modalias[SPI_NAME_SIZE];
};
```

## Members

`dev`

Driver model representation of the device.

`master`

SPI controller used with the device.

`max_speed_hz`

Maximum clock rate to be used with this chip (on this board); may be changed by the device's driver. The `spi_transfer.speed_hz` can override this for each transfer.

`chip_select`

Chipselect, distinguishing chips handled by *master*.

`mode`

The spi mode defines how data is clocked out and in. This may be changed by the device's driver. The “active low” default for chipselect mode can be overridden (by specifying `SPI_CS_HIGH`) as can the “MSB first” default for each word in a transfer (by specifying `SPI_LSB_FIRST`).

`bits_per_word`

Data transfers involve one or more words; word sizes like eight or 12 bits are common. In-memory wordsizes are powers of two bytes (e.g. 20 bit samples use 32 bits). This may be changed by the device's driver, or left at the default (0) indicating protocol words are eight bit bytes. The `spi_transfer.bits_per_word` can override this for each transfer.

`irq`

Negative, or the number passed to `request_irq` to receive interrupts from this device.

`controller_state`

Controller's runtime state

`controller_data`

Board-specific definitions for controller, such as FIFO initialization parameters; from `board_info.controller_data`

`modalias[SPI_NAME_SIZE]`

Name of the driver to use with this device, or an alias for that name. This appears in the sysfs “modalias” attribute for driver coldplugging, and in uevents used for hotplugging

## Description

A *spi\_device* is used to interchange data between an SPI slave (usually a discrete chip) and CPU memory.

In *dev*, the `platform_data` is used to hold information about this device that's meaningful to the device's protocol driver, but not to its controller. One example might be an identifier for a chip variant with slightly different functionality; another might be information about how this particular board wires the chip's pins.

## struct spi\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct spi_driver` — Host side “protocol” driver

### Synopsis

```
struct spi_driver {
    const struct spi_device_id * id_table;
    int (* probe) (struct spi_device *spi);
    int (* remove) (struct spi_device *spi);
    void (* shutdown) (struct spi_device *spi);
    int (* suspend) (struct spi_device *spi, pm_message_t mesg);
    int (* resume) (struct spi_device *spi);
    struct device_driver driver;
};
```

### Members

`id_table`

List of SPI devices supported by this driver

`probe`

Binds this driver to the spi device. Drivers can verify that the device is actually present, and may need to configure characteristics (such as `bits_per_word`) which weren't needed for the initial configuration done during system setup.

remove

Unbinds this driver from the spi device

shutdown

Standard shutdown callback used during system state transitions such as powerdown/halt and kexec

suspend

Standard suspend callback used during system state transitions

resume

Standard resume callback used during system state transitions

driver

SPI device drivers should initialize the name and owner field of this structure.

## Description

This represents the kind of device driver that uses SPI messages to interact with the hardware at the other end of a SPI link. It's called a "protocol" driver because it works through messages rather than talking directly to SPI hardware (which is what the underlying SPI controller driver does to pass those messages). These protocols are defined in the specification for the device(s) supported by the driver.

As a rule, those device protocols represent the lowest level interface supported by a driver, and it will support upper level interfaces too. Examples of such upper levels include frameworks like MTD, networking, MMC, RTC, filesystem character device nodes, and hardware monitoring.

## spi\_unregister\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

spi\_unregister\_driver — reverse effect of spi\_register\_driver

## Synopsis

```
void spi_unregister_driver (struct spi_driver * sdrv);
```

## Arguments

*sdrv*

the driver to unregister

## Context

can sleep

## struct spi\_master

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct spi\_master — interface to SPI master controller

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_master {  
    struct device dev;  
    struct list_head list;  
    s16 bus_num;  
    u16 num_chipselect;  
    u16 dma_alignment;  
    u16 mode_bits;  
    u16 flags;  
#define SPI_MASTER_HALF_DUPLEX BIT(0)
```

```
#define SPI_MASTER_NO_RX BIT(1)
#define SPI_MASTER_NO_TX BIT(2)
    spinlock_t bus_lock_spinlock;
    struct mutex bus_lock_mutex;
    bool bus_lock_flag;
    int (* setup) (struct spi_device *spi);
    int (* transfer) (struct spi_device *spi, struct spi_message *mesg);
    void (* cleanup) (struct spi_device *spi);
};
```

## Members

dev

device interface to this driver

list

link with the global spi\_master list

bus\_num

board-specific (and often SOC-specific) identifier for a given SPI controller.

num\_chipselect

chipselects are used to distinguish individual SPI slaves, and are numbered from zero to num\_chipselects. each slave has a chipselect signal, but it's common that not every chipselect is connected to a slave.

dma\_alignment

SPI controller constraint on DMA buffers alignment.

mode\_bits

flags understood by this controller driver

flags

other constraints relevant to this driver

bus\_lock\_spinlock

spinlock for SPI bus locking

bus\_lock\_mutex

mutex for SPI bus locking

`bus_lock_flag`

indicates that the SPI bus is locked for exclusive use

`setup`

updates the device mode and clocking records used by a device's SPI controller; protocol code may call this. This must fail if an unrecognized or unsupported mode is requested. It's always safe to call this unless transfers are pending on the device whose settings are being modified.

`transfer`

adds a message to the controller's transfer queue.

`cleanup`

frees controller-specific state

## Description

Each SPI master controller can communicate with one or more *spi\_device* children. These make a small bus, sharing MOSI, MISO and SCK signals but not chip select signals. Each device may be configured to use a different clock rate, since those shared signals are ignored unless the chip is selected.

The driver for an SPI controller manages access to those devices through a queue of *spi\_message* transactions, copying data between CPU memory and an SPI slave device. For each such message it queues, it calls the message's completion function when the transaction completes.

## struct spi\_transfer

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct spi_transfer` — a read/write buffer pair



## Synopsis

```
struct spi_transfer {
    const void * tx_buf;
    void * rx_buf;
    unsigned len;
    dma_addr_t tx_dma;
    dma_addr_t rx_dma;
    unsigned cs_change:1;
    u8 bits_per_word;
    u16 delay_usecs;
    u32 speed_hz;
    struct list_head transfer_list;
};
```

## Members

**tx\_buf**

data to be written (dma-safe memory), or NULL

**rx\_buf**

data to be read (dma-safe memory), or NULL

**len**

size of rx and tx buffers (in bytes)

**tx\_dma**

DMA address of tx\_buf, if *spi\_message.is\_dma\_mapped*

**rx\_dma**

DMA address of rx\_buf, if *spi\_message.is\_dma\_mapped*

**cs\_change**

affects chipselect after this transfer completes

**bits\_per\_word**

select a bits\_per\_word other than the device default for this transfer. If 0 the default (from *spi\_device*) is used.

`delay_usecs`

microseconds to delay after this transfer before (optionally) changing the chipselect status, then starting the next transfer or completing this *spi\_message*.

`speed_hz`

Select a speed other than the device default for this transfer. If 0 the default (from *spi\_device*) is used.

`transfer_list`

transfers are sequenced through *spi\_message.transfers*

## Description

SPI transfers always write the same number of bytes as they read. Protocol drivers should always provide *rx\_buf* and/or *tx\_buf*. In some cases, they may also want to provide DMA addresses for the data being transferred; that may reduce overhead, when the underlying driver uses dma.

If the transmit buffer is null, zeroes will be shifted out while filling *rx\_buf*. If the receive buffer is null, the data shifted in will be discarded. Only “len” bytes shift out (or in). It’s an error to try to shift out a partial word. (For example, by shifting out three bytes with word size of sixteen or twenty bits; the former uses two bytes per word, the latter uses four bytes.)

In-memory data values are always in native CPU byte order, translated from the wire byte order (big-endian except with SPI\_LSB\_FIRST). So for example when *bits\_per\_word* is sixteen, buffers are 2N bytes long (*len* = 2N) and hold N sixteen bit words in CPU byte order.

When the word size of the SPI transfer is not a power-of-two multiple of eight bits, those in-memory words include extra bits. In-memory words are always seen by protocol drivers as right-justified, so the undefined (rx) or unused (tx) bits are always the most significant bits.

All SPI transfers start with the relevant chipselect active. Normally it stays selected until after the last transfer in a message. Drivers can affect the chipselect signal using *cs\_change*.

(i) If the transfer isn’t the last one in the message, this flag is used to make the chipselect briefly go inactive in the middle of the message. Toggling chipselect in this way may be needed to terminate a chip command, letting a single *spi\_message* perform all of group of chip transactions together.

(ii) When the transfer is the last one in the message, the chip may stay selected until the next transfer. On multi-device SPI busses with nothing blocking messages going to other devices, this is just a performance hint; starting a message to another device deselects this one. But in other cases, this can be used to ensure correctness. Some devices need protocol transactions to be built from a series of `spi_message` submissions, where the content of one message is determined by the results of previous messages and where the whole transaction ends when the chipselect goes inactive.

The code that submits an `spi_message` (and its `spi_transfers`) to the lower layers is responsible for managing its memory. Zero-initialize every field you don't set up explicitly, to insulate against future API updates. After you submit a message and its transfers, ignore them until its completion callback.

## struct spi\_message

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct spi_message` — one multi-segment SPI transaction

### Synopsis

```
struct spi_message {
    struct list_head transfers;
    struct spi_device * spi;
    unsigned is_dma_mapped:1;
    void (* complete) (void *context);
    void * context;
    unsigned actual_length;
    int status;
    struct list_head queue;
    void * state;
};
```

## Members

`transfers`

list of transfer segments in this transaction

`spi`

SPI device to which the transaction is queued

`is_dma_mapped`

if true, the caller provided both dma and cpu virtual addresses for each transfer buffer

`complete`

called to report transaction completions

`context`

the argument to `complete` when it's called

`actual_length`

the total number of bytes that were transferred in all successful segments

`status`

zero for success, else negative errno

`queue`

for use by whichever driver currently owns the message

`state`

for use by whichever driver currently owns the message

## Description

A *spi\_message* is used to execute an atomic sequence of data transfers, each represented by a struct `spi_transfer`. The sequence is “atomic” in the sense that no other `spi_message` may use that SPI bus until that sequence completes. On some systems, many such sequences can execute as a single programmed DMA transfer. On all systems, these messages are queued, and might complete after transactions to other devices. Messages sent to a given `spi_device` are always executed in FIFO order.

The code that submits an `spi_message` (and its `spi_transfers`) to the lower layers is responsible for managing its memory. Zero-initialize every field you don't set up explicitly, to insulate against future API updates. After you submit a message and its transfers, ignore them until its completion callback.

## spi\_write

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_write` — SPI synchronous write

### Synopsis

```
int spi_write (struct spi_device * spi, const void * buf,  
size_t len);
```

### Arguments

*spi*

device to which data will be written

*buf*

data buffer

*len*

data buffer size

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This writes the buffer and returns zero or a negative error code. Callable only from contexts that can sleep.

# spi\_read

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_read` — SPI synchronous read

## Synopsis

```
int spi_read (struct spi_device * spi, void * buf, size_t  
len);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

device from which data will be read

*buf*

data buffer

*len*

data buffer size

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This reads the buffer and returns zero or a negative error code. Callable only from contexts that can sleep.

# spi\_w8r8

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_w8r8` — SPI synchronous 8 bit write followed by 8 bit read

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t spi_w8r8 (struct spi_device * spi, u8 cmd);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*cmd*

command to be written before data is read back

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This returns the (unsigned) eight bit number returned by the device, or else a negative error code. Callable only from contexts that can sleep.

# spi\_w8r16

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_w8r16` — SPI synchronous 8 bit write followed by 16 bit read

## Synopsis

```
ssize_t spi_w8r16 (struct spi_device * spi, u8 cmd);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged



*cmd*

command to be written before data is read back

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This returns the (unsigned) sixteen bit number returned by the device, or else a negative error code. Callable only from contexts that can sleep.

The number is returned in wire-order, which is at least sometimes big-endian.

# struct spi\_board\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

struct spi\_board\_info — board-specific template for a SPI device

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_board_info {
    char modalias[SPI_NAME_SIZE];
    const void * platform_data;
    void * controller_data;
    int irq;
    u32 max_speed_hz;
    u16 bus_num;
    u16 chip_select;
    u8 mode;
};
```

## Members

`modalias[SPI_NAME_SIZE]`

Initializes `spi_device.modalias`; identifies the driver.

`platform_data`

Initializes `spi_device.platform_data`; the particular data stored there is driver-specific.

`controller_data`

Initializes `spi_device.controller_data`; some controllers need hints about hardware setup, e.g. for DMA.

`irq`

Initializes `spi_device.irq`; depends on how the board is wired.

`max_speed_hz`

Initializes `spi_device.max_speed_hz`; based on limits from the chip datasheet and board-specific signal quality issues.

`bus_num`

Identifies which `spi_master` parents the `spi_device`; unused by `spi_new_device`, and otherwise depends on board wiring.

`chip_select`

Initializes `spi_device.chip_select`; depends on how the board is wired.

`mode`

Initializes `spi_device.mode`; based on the chip datasheet, board wiring (some devices support both 3WIRE and standard modes), and possibly presence of an inverter in the chipselect path.

## Description

When adding new SPI devices to the device tree, these structures serve as a partial device template. They hold information which can't always be determined by drivers. Information that `probe` can establish (such as the default transfer wordsize) is not included here.

These structures are used in two places. Their primary role is to be stored in tables of board-specific device descriptors, which are declared early in board initialization

and then used (much later) to populate a controller's device tree after the that controller's driver initializes. A secondary (and atypical) role is as a parameter to `spi_new_device` call, which happens after those controller drivers are active in some dynamic board configuration models.

## spi\_register\_board\_info

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_register_board_info` — register SPI devices for a given board

### Synopsis

```
int spi_register_board_info (struct spi_board_info const *  
info, unsigned n);
```

### Arguments

*info*

array of chip descriptors

*n*

how many descriptors are provided

### Context

can sleep

## Description

Board-specific early init code calls this (probably during `arch_initcall`) with segments of the SPI device table. Any device nodes are created later, after the relevant parent SPI controller (`bus_num`) is defined. We keep this table of devices forever, so that reloading a controller driver will not make Linux forget about these hard-wired devices.

Other code can also call this, e.g. a particular add-on board might provide SPI devices through its expansion connector, so code initializing that board would naturally declare its SPI devices.

The board info passed can safely be `__initdata` ... but be careful of any embedded pointers (`platform_data`, etc), they're copied as-is.

## spi\_register\_driver

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_register_driver` — register a SPI driver

### Synopsis

```
int spi_register_driver (struct spi_driver * sdrv);
```

### Arguments

*sdrv*

the driver to register

## Context

can sleep

# spi\_alloc\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_alloc_device` — Allocate a new SPI device

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_device * spi_alloc_device (struct spi_master *  
master);
```

## Arguments

*master*

Controller to which device is connected

## Context

can sleep

## Description

Allows a driver to allocate and initialize a `spi_device` without registering it immediately. This allows a driver to directly fill the `spi_device` with device parameters before calling `spi_add_device` on it.

Caller is responsible to call `spi_add_device` on the returned `spi_device` structure to add it to the SPI master. If the caller needs to discard the `spi_device` without adding it, then it should call `spi_dev_put` on it.

Returns a pointer to the new device, or NULL.

## `spi_add_device`

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_add_device` — Add `spi_device` allocated with `spi_alloc_device`

## Synopsis

```
int spi_add_device (struct spi_device * spi);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

`spi_device` to register

## Description

Companion function to `spi_alloc_device`. Devices allocated with `spi_alloc_device` can be added onto the spi bus with this function.

Returns 0 on success; negative `errno` on failure

# spi\_new\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_new_device` — instantiate one new SPI device

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_device * spi_new_device (struct spi_master *  
master, struct spi_board_info * chip);
```

## Arguments

*master*

Controller to which device is connected

*chip*

Describes the SPI device

## Context

can sleep

## Description

On typical mainboards, this is purely internal; and it's not needed after board init creates the hard-wired devices. Some development platforms may not be able to use `spi_register_board_info` though, and this is exported so that for example a USB or parport based adapter driver could add devices (which it would learn about out-of-band).

Returns the new device, or NULL.

## spi\_alloc\_master

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_alloc_master` — allocate SPI master controller

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_master * spi_alloc_master (struct device * dev,
unsigned size);
```

## Arguments

*dev*

the controller, possibly using the `platform_bus`

*size*

how much zeroed driver-private data to allocate; the pointer to this memory is in the `driver_data` field of the returned device, accessible with `spi_master_get_devdata`.



## Context

can sleep

## Description

This call is used only by SPI master controller drivers, which are the only ones directly touching chip registers. It's how they allocate an `spi_master` structure, prior to calling `spi_register_master`.

This must be called from context that can sleep. It returns the SPI master structure on success, else `NULL`.

The caller is responsible for assigning the bus number and initializing the master's methods before calling `spi_register_master`; and (after errors adding the device) calling `spi_master_put` to prevent a memory leak.

# spi\_register\_master

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_register_master` — register SPI master controller

## Synopsis

```
int spi_register_master (struct spi_master * master);
```

## Arguments

`master`

initialized master, originally from `spi_alloc_master`

## Context

can sleep

## Description

SPI master controllers connect to their drivers using some non-SPI bus, such as the platform bus. The final stage of `probe` in that code includes calling `spi_register_master` to hook up to this SPI bus glue.

SPI controllers use board specific (often SOC specific) bus numbers, and board-specific addressing for SPI devices combines those numbers with chip select numbers. Since SPI does not directly support dynamic device identification, boards need configuration tables telling which chip is at which address.

This must be called from context that can sleep. It returns zero on success, else a negative error code (dropping the master's refcount). After a successful return, the caller is responsible for calling `spi_unregister_master`.

# spi\_unregister\_master

**LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_unregister_master` — unregister SPI master controller

## Synopsis

```
void spi_unregister_master (struct spi_master * master);
```

## Arguments

*master*

the master being unregistered

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This call is used only by SPI master controller drivers, which are the only ones directly touching chip registers.

This must be called from context that can sleep.

# spi\_busnum\_to\_master

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_busnum_to_master` — look up master associated with `bus_num`

## Synopsis

```
struct spi_master * spi_busnum_to_master (u16 bus_num);
```

## Arguments

*bus\_num*

the master's bus number

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This call may be used with devices that are registered after arch init time. It returns a refcounted pointer to the relevant `spi_master` (which the caller must release), or `NULL` if there is no such master registered.

## spi\_setup

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`spi_setup` — setup SPI mode and clock rate

## Synopsis

```
int spi_setup (struct spi_device * spi);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

the device whose settings are being modified

## Context

can sleep, and no requests are queued to the device

## Description

SPI protocol drivers may need to update the transfer mode if the device doesn't work with its default. They may likewise need to update clock rates or word sizes from initial values. This function changes those settings, and must be called from a context that can sleep. Except for SPI\_CS\_HIGH, which takes effect immediately, the changes take effect the next time the device is selected and data is transferred to or from it. When this function returns, the spi device is deselected.

Note that this call will fail if the protocol driver specifies an option that the underlying controller or its driver does not support. For example, not all hardware supports wire transfers using nine bit words, LSB-first wire encoding, or active-high chipselects.

## spi\_async

**LINUX**

## Name

`spi_async` — asynchronous SPI transfer

## Synopsis

```
int spi_async (struct spi_device * spi, struct spi_message *  
message);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*message*

describes the data transfers, including completion callback

## Context

any (irqs may be blocked, etc)

## Description

This call may be used in `_irq` and other contexts which can't sleep, as well as from task contexts which can sleep.

The completion callback is invoked in a context which can't sleep. Before that invocation, the value of `message->status` is undefined. When the callback is issued, `message->status` holds either zero (to indicate complete success) or a negative error code. After that callback returns, the driver which issued the transfer request may deallocate the associated memory; it's no longer in use by any SPI core or controller driver code.

Note that although all messages to a `spi_device` are handled in FIFO order, messages may go to different devices in other orders. Some device might be higher priority, or have various “hard” access time requirements, for example.

On detection of any fault during the transfer, processing of the entire message is aborted, and the device is deselected. Until returning from the associated message completion callback, no other `spi_message` queued to that device will be processed. (This rule applies equally to all the synchronous transfer calls, which are wrappers around this core asynchronous primitive.)

## spi\_async\_locked

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_async_locked` — version of `spi_async` with exclusive bus usage

### Synopsis

```
int spi_async_locked (struct spi_device * spi, struct  
spi_message * message);
```

### Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*message*

describes the data transfers, including completion callback

## Context

any (irqs may be blocked, etc)

## Description

This call may be used in\_irq and other contexts which can't sleep, as well as from task contexts which can sleep.

The completion callback is invoked in a context which can't sleep. Before that invocation, the value of message->status is undefined. When the callback is issued, message->status holds either zero (to indicate complete success) or a negative error code. After that callback returns, the driver which issued the transfer request may deallocate the associated memory; it's no longer in use by any SPI core or controller driver code.

Note that although all messages to a spi\_device are handled in FIFO order, messages may go to different devices in other orders. Some device might be higher priority, or have various "hard" access time requirements, for example.

On detection of any fault during the transfer, processing of the entire message is aborted, and the device is deselected. Until returning from the associated message completion callback, no other spi\_message queued to that device will be processed. (This rule applies equally to all the synchronous transfer calls, which are wrappers around this core asynchronous primitive.)

## spi\_sync

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

spi\_sync — blocking/synchronous SPI data transfers



## Synopsis

```
int spi_sync (struct spi_device * spi, struct spi_message *  
message);
```

## Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*message*

describes the data transfers

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This call may only be used from a context that may sleep. The sleep is non-interruptible, and has no timeout. Low-overhead controller drivers may DMA directly into and out of the message buffers.

Note that the SPI device's chip select is active during the message, and then is normally disabled between messages. Drivers for some frequently-used devices may want to minimize costs of selecting a chip, by leaving it selected in anticipation that the next message will go to the same chip. (That may increase power usage.)

Also, the caller is guaranteeing that the memory associated with the message will not be freed before this call returns.

It returns zero on success, else a negative error code.

# spi\_sync\_locked

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_sync_locked` — version of `spi_sync` with exclusive bus usage

### Synopsis

```
int spi_sync_locked (struct spi_device * spi, struct  
spi_message * message);
```

### Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*message*

describes the data transfers

### Context

can sleep

### Description

This call may only be used from a context that may sleep. The sleep is non-interruptible, and has no timeout. Low-overhead controller drivers may DMA directly into and out of the message buffers.

This call should be used by drivers that require exclusive access to the SPI bus. It has to be preceded by a `spi_bus_lock` call. The SPI bus must be released by a `spi_bus_unlock` call when the exclusive access is over.

It returns zero on success, else a negative error code.

## **spi\_bus\_lock**

### **LINUX**

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### **Name**

`spi_bus_lock` — obtain a lock for exclusive SPI bus usage

### **Synopsis**

```
int spi_bus_lock (struct spi_master * master);
```

### **Arguments**

*master*

SPI bus master that should be locked for exclusive bus access

### **Context**

can sleep

### **Description**

This call may only be used from a context that may sleep. The sleep is non-interruptible, and has no timeout.

This call should be used by drivers that require exclusive access to the SPI bus. The SPI bus must be released by a `spi_bus_unlock` call when the exclusive access is

over. Data transfer must be done by `spi_sync_locked` and `spi_async_locked` calls when the SPI bus lock is held.

It returns zero on success, else a negative error code.

## spi\_bus\_unlock

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_bus_unlock` — release the lock for exclusive SPI bus usage

### Synopsis

```
int spi_bus_unlock (struct spi_master * master);
```

### Arguments

*master*

SPI bus master that was locked for exclusive bus access

### Context

can sleep

### Description

This call may only be used from a context that may sleep. The sleep is non-interruptible, and has no timeout.

This call releases an SPI bus lock previously obtained by an `spi_bus_lock` call.

It returns zero on success, else a negative error code.

## spi\_write\_then\_read

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`spi_write_then_read` — SPI synchronous write followed by read

### Synopsis

```
int spi_write_then_read (struct spi_device * spi, const void *  
txbuf, unsigned n_tx, void * rxbuf, unsigned n_rx);
```

### Arguments

*spi*

device with which data will be exchanged

*txbuf*

data to be written (need not be dma-safe)

*n\_tx*

size of *txbuf*, in bytes

*rxbuf*

buffer into which data will be read (need not be dma-safe)

*n\_rx*

size of rxbuf, in bytes

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This performs a half duplex MicroWire style transaction with the device, sending txbuf and then reading rxbuf. The return value is zero for success, else a negative errno status code. This call may only be used from a context that may sleep.

Parameters to this routine are always copied using a small buffer; portable code should never use this for more than 32 bytes. Performance-sensitive or bulk transfer code should instead use spi\_{async,sync}() calls with dma-safe buffers.

# Chapter 10. I<sup>2</sup>C and SMBus Subsystem

I<sup>2</sup>C (or without fancy typography, "I2C") is an acronym for the "Inter-IC" bus, a simple bus protocol which is widely used where low data rate communications suffice. Since it's also a licensed trademark, some vendors use another name (such as "Two-Wire Interface", TWI) for the same bus. I2C only needs two signals (SCL for clock, SDA for data), conserving board real estate and minimizing signal quality issues. Most I2C devices use seven bit addresses, and bus speeds of up to 400 kHz; there's a high speed extension (3.4 MHz) that's not yet found wide use. I2C is a multi-master bus; open drain signaling is used to arbitrate between masters, as well as to handshake and to synchronize clocks from slower clients.

The Linux I2C programming interfaces support only the master side of bus interactions, not the slave side. The programming interface is structured around two kinds of driver, and two kinds of device. An I2C "Adapter Driver" abstracts the controller hardware; it binds to a physical device (perhaps a PCI device or platform\_device) and exposes a struct `i2c_adapter` representing each I2C bus segment it manages. On each I2C bus segment will be I2C devices represented by a struct `i2c_client`. Those devices will be bound to a struct `i2c_driver`, which should follow the standard Linux driver model. (At this writing, a legacy model is more widely used.) There are functions to perform various I2C protocol operations; at this writing all such functions are usable only from task context.

The System Management Bus (SMBus) is a sibling protocol. Most SMBus systems are also I2C conformant. The electrical constraints are tighter for SMBus, and it standardizes particular protocol messages and idioms. Controllers that support I2C can also support most SMBus operations, but SMBus controllers don't support all the protocol options that an I2C controller will. There are functions to perform various SMBus protocol operations, either using I2C primitives or by issuing SMBus commands to `i2c_adapter` devices which don't support those I2C operations.

## struct `i2c_driver`

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct i2c_driver` — represent an I2C device driver

## Synopsis

```
struct i2c_driver {
    unsigned int class;
    int (* attach_adapter) (struct i2c_adapter *);
    int (* detach_adapter) (struct i2c_adapter *);
    int (* probe) (struct i2c_client *, const struct i2c_device_id *);
    int (* remove) (struct i2c_client *);
    void (* shutdown) (struct i2c_client *);
    int (* suspend) (struct i2c_client *, pm_message_t mesg);
    int (* resume) (struct i2c_client *);
    void (* alert) (struct i2c_client *, unsigned int data);
    int (* command) (struct i2c_client *client, unsigned int cmd, void *arg);
    struct device_driver driver;
    const struct i2c_device_id * id_table;
    int (* detect) (struct i2c_client *, struct i2c_board_info *);
    const unsigned short * address_list;
    struct list_head clients;
};
```

## Members

class

What kind of i2c device we instantiate (for detect)

attach\_adapter

Callback for bus addition (deprecated)

detach\_adapter

Callback for bus removal (deprecated)

probe

Callback for device binding

remove

Callback for device unbinding

shutdown

Callback for device shutdown



suspend

Callback for device suspend

resume

Callback for device resume

alert

Alert callback, for example for the SMBus alert protocol

command

Callback for bus-wide signaling (optional)

driver

Device driver model driver

id\_table

List of I2C devices supported by this driver

detect

Callback for device detection

address\_list

The I2C addresses to probe (for detect)

clients

List of detected clients we created (for i2c-core use only)

## Description

The `driver.owner` field should be set to the module owner of this driver. The `driver.name` field should be set to the name of this driver.

For automatic device detection, both `detect` and `address_data` must be defined. `class` should also be set, otherwise only devices forced with module parameters will be created. The detect function must fill at least the name field of the `i2c_board_info` structure it is handed upon successful detection, and possibly also the flags field.

If `detect` is missing, the driver will still work fine for enumerated devices. Detected devices simply won't be supported. This is expected for the many I2C/SMBus devices which can't be detected reliably, and the ones which can always be enumerated in practice.

The `i2c_client` structure which is handed to the `detect` callback is not a real `i2c_client`. It is initialized just enough so that you can call `i2c_smbus_read_byte_data` and friends on it. Don't do anything else with it. In particular, calling `dev_dbg` and friends on it is not allowed.

## struct i2c\_client

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct i2c_client` — represent an I2C slave device

### Synopsis

```
struct i2c_client {
    unsigned short flags;
    unsigned short addr;
    char name[I2C_NAME_SIZE];
    struct i2c_adapter * adapter;
    struct i2c_driver * driver;
    struct device dev;
    int irq;
    struct list_head detected;
};
```

### Members

flags

`I2C_CLIENT_TEN` indicates the device uses a ten bit chip address;  
`I2C_CLIENT_PEC` indicates it uses SMBus Packet Error Checking

addr

Address used on the I2C bus connected to the parent adapter.

`name[I2C_NAME_SIZE]`

Indicates the type of the device, usually a chip name that's generic enough to hide second-sourcing and compatible revisions.

`adapter`

manages the bus segment hosting this I2C device

`driver`

device's driver, hence pointer to access routines

`dev`

Driver model device node for the slave.

`irq`

indicates the IRQ generated by this device (if any)

`detected`

member of an `i2c_driver.clients` list or `i2c-core's userspace_devices` list

## Description

An `i2c_client` identifies a single device (i.e. chip) connected to an i2c bus. The behaviour exposed to Linux is defined by the driver managing the device.

## struct i2c\_board\_info

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`struct i2c_board_info` — template for device creation

## Synopsis

```
struct i2c_board_info {  
    char type[I2C_NAME_SIZE];  
    unsigned short flags;  
    unsigned short addr;  
    void * platform_data;  
    struct dev_archdata * archdata;  
    struct device_node * of_node;  
    int irq;  
};
```

## Members

`type[I2C_NAME_SIZE]`  
chip type, to initialize `i2c_client.name`

`flags`  
to initialize `i2c_client.flags`

`addr`  
stored in `i2c_client.addr`

`platform_data`  
stored in `i2c_client.dev.platform_data`

`archdata`  
copied into `i2c_client.dev.archdata`

`of_node`  
pointer to OpenFirmware device node

`irq`  
stored in `i2c_client.irq`

## Description

I2C doesn't actually support hardware probing, although controllers and devices may be able to use `I2C_SMBUS_QUICK` to tell whether or not there's a device at a

given address. Drivers commonly need more information than that, such as chip type, configuration, associated IRQ, and so on.

`i2c_board_info` is used to build tables of information listing I2C devices that are present. This information is used to grow the driver model tree. For mainboards this is done statically using `i2c_register_board_info`; bus numbers identify adapters that aren't yet available. For add-on boards, `i2c_new_device` does this dynamically with the adapter already known.

## I2C\_BOARD\_INFO

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`I2C_BOARD_INFO` — macro used to list an i2c device and its address

### Synopsis

```
I2C_BOARD_INFO ( dev_type,   dev_addr );
```

### Arguments

*dev\_type*

identifies the device type

*dev\_addr*

the device's address on the bus.

## Description

This macro initializes essential fields of a struct `i2c_board_info`, declaring what has been provided on a particular board. Optional fields (such as associated `irq`, or device-specific `platform_data`) are provided using conventional syntax.

## struct i2c\_msg

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

struct `i2c_msg` — an I2C transaction segment beginning with START

### Synopsis

```
struct i2c_msg {
    __u16 addr;
    __u16 flags;
#define I2C_M_TEN    0x0010
#define I2C_M_RD     0x0001
#define I2C_M_NOSTART 0x4000
#define I2C_M_REV_DIR_ADDR 0x2000
#define I2C_M_IGNORE_NAK 0x1000
#define I2C_M_NO_RD_ACK 0x0800
#define I2C_M_RECV_LEN 0x0400
    __u16 len;
    __u8 * buf;
};
```

### Members

`addr`

Slave address, either seven or ten bits. When this is a ten bit address, `I2C_M_TEN` must be set in `flags` and the adapter must support

I2C\_FUNC\_10BIT\_ADDR.

flags

I2C\_M\_RD is handled by all adapters. No other flags may be provided unless the adapter exported the relevant I2C\_FUNC\_\* flags through `i2c_check_functionality`.

len

Number of data bytes in *buf* being read from or written to the I2C slave address. For read transactions where I2C\_M\_RECV\_LEN is set, the caller guarantees that this buffer can hold up to 32 bytes in addition to the initial length byte sent by the slave (plus, if used, the SMBus PEC); and this value will be incremented by the number of block data bytes received.

buf

The buffer into which data is read, or from which it's written.

## Description

An `i2c_msg` is the low level representation of one segment of an I2C transaction. It is visible to drivers in the `i2c_transfer()` procedure, to userspace from `i2c-dev`, and to I2C adapter drivers through the `i2c_adapter.master_xfer()` method.

Except when I2C “protocol mangling” is used, all I2C adapters implement the standard rules for I2C transactions. Each transaction begins with a START. That is followed by the slave address, and a bit encoding read versus write. Then follow all the data bytes, possibly including a byte with SMBus PEC. The transfer terminates with a NAK, or when all those bytes have been transferred and ACKed. If this is the last message in a group, it is followed by a STOP. Otherwise it is followed by the next `i2c_msg` transaction segment, beginning with a (repeated) START.

Alternatively, when the adapter supports I2C\_FUNC\_PROTOCOL\_MANGLING then passing certain *flags* may have changed those standard protocol behaviors. Those flags are only for use with broken/nonconforming slaves, and with adapters which are known to support the specific mangling options they need (one or more of IGNORE\_NAK, NO\_RD\_ACK, NOSTART, and REV\_DIR\_ADDR).

# i2c\_register\_board\_info

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_register_board_info` — statically declare I2C devices

### Synopsis

```
int i2c_register_board_info (int busnum, struct i2c_board_info
const * info, unsigned len);
```

### Arguments

*busnum*

identifies the bus to which these devices belong

*info*

vector of i2c device descriptors

*len*

how many descriptors in the vector; may be zero to reserve the specified bus number.

### Description

Systems using the Linux I2C driver stack can declare tables of board info while they initialize. This should be done in board-specific init code near `arch_initcall` time, or equivalent, before any I2C adapter driver is registered. For example, mainboard init code could define several devices, as could the init code for each daughtercard in a board stack.



The I<sup>2</sup>C devices will be created later, after the adapter for the relevant bus has been registered. After that moment, standard driver model tools are used to bind “new style” I<sup>2</sup>C drivers to the devices. The bus number for any device declared using this routine is not available for dynamic allocation.

The board info passed can safely be `__initdata`, but be careful of embedded pointers (for `platform_data`, functions, etc) since that won’t be copied.

## i2c\_verify\_client

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_verify_client` — return parameter as `i2c_client`, or `NULL`

### Synopsis

```
struct i2c_client * i2c_verify_client (struct device * dev);
```

### Arguments

*dev*

device, probably from some driver model iterator

### Description

When traversing the driver model tree, perhaps using driver model iterators like `device_for_each_child()`, you can’t assume very much about the nodes you find. Use this function to avoid oopses caused by wrongly treating some non-I<sup>2</sup>C device as an `i2c_client`.

## i2c\_lock\_adapter

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`i2c_lock_adapter` — Get exclusive access to an I2C bus segment

#### Synopsis

```
void i2c_lock_adapter (struct i2c_adapter * adapter);
```

#### Arguments

*adapter*

Target I2C bus segment

## i2c\_unlock\_adapter

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

#### Name

`i2c_unlock_adapter` — Release exclusive access to an I2C bus segment

## Synopsis

```
void i2c_unlock_adapter (struct i2c_adapter * adapter);
```

## Arguments

*adapter*

Target I2C bus segment

## i2c\_new\_device

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_new_device` — instantiate an i2c device

## Synopsis

```
struct i2c_client * i2c_new_device (struct i2c_adapter * adap,  
struct i2c_board_info const * info);
```

## Arguments

*adap*

the adapter managing the device

*info*

describes one I2C device; `bus_num` is ignored

## Context

can sleep

## Description

Create an i2c device. Binding is handled through driver model `probe/remove` methods. A driver may be bound to this device when we return from this function, or any later moment (e.g. maybe hotplugging will load the driver module). This call is not appropriate for use by mainboard initialization logic, which usually runs during an `arch_initcall` long before any `i2c_adapter` could exist.

This returns the new i2c client, which may be saved for later use with `i2c_unregister_device`; or `NULL` to indicate an error.

# i2c\_unregister\_device

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_unregister_device` — reverse effect of `i2c_new_device`

## Synopsis

```
void i2c_unregister_device (struct i2c_client * client);
```

## Arguments

*client*

value returned from `i2c_new_device`

## Context

can sleep

# i2c\_new\_dummy

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_new_dummy` — return a new i2c device bound to a dummy driver

## Synopsis

```
struct i2c_client * i2c_new_dummy (struct i2c_adapter *  
adapter, u16 address);
```

## Arguments

*adapter*

the adapter managing the device

*address*

seven bit address to be used

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This returns an I2C client bound to the “dummy” driver, intended for use with devices that consume multiple addresses. Examples of such chips include various EEPROMS (like 24c04 and 24c08 models).

These dummy devices have two main uses. First, most I2C and SMBus calls except `i2c_transfer` need a client handle; the dummy will be that handle. And second, this prevents the specified address from being bound to a different driver.

This returns the new i2c client, which should be saved for later use with `i2c_unregister_device`; or NULL to indicate an error.

## i2c\_add\_adapter

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_add_adapter` — declare i2c adapter, use dynamic bus number

## Synopsis

```
int i2c_add_adapter (struct i2c_adapter * adapter);
```

## Arguments

*adapter*

the adapter to add

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This routine is used to declare an I2C adapter when its bus number doesn't matter. Examples: for I2C adapters dynamically added by USB links or PCI plugin cards.

When this returns zero, a new bus number was allocated and stored in `adap->nr`, and the specified adapter became available for clients. Otherwise, a negative `errno` value is returned.

# i2c\_add\_numbered\_adapter

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_add_numbered_adapter` — declare i2c adapter, use static bus number

## Synopsis

```
int i2c_add_numbered_adapter (struct i2c_adapter * adap);
```

## Arguments

*adap*

the adapter to register (with *adap->nr* initialized)

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This routine is used to declare an I2C adapter when its bus number matters. For example, use it for I2C adapters from system-on-chip CPUs, or otherwise built in to the system's mainboard, and where *i2c\_board\_info* is used to properly configure I2C devices.

If no devices have pre-been declared for this bus, then be sure to register the adapter before any dynamically allocated ones. Otherwise the required bus ID may not be available.

When this returns zero, the specified adapter became available for clients using the bus number provided in *adap->nr*. Also, the table of I2C devices pre-declared using *i2c\_register\_board\_info* is scanned, and the appropriate driver model device nodes are created. Otherwise, a negative *errno* value is returned.

## i2c\_del\_adapter

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

*i2c\_del\_adapter* — unregister I2C adapter



## Synopsis

```
int i2c_del_adapter (struct i2c_adapter * adap);
```

## Arguments

*adap*

the adapter being unregistered

## Context

can sleep

## Description

This unregisters an I2C adapter which was previously registered by *i2c\_add\_adapter* or *i2c\_add\_numbered\_adapter*.

# i2c\_del\_driver

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

*i2c\_del\_driver* — unregister I2C driver

## Synopsis

```
void i2c_del_driver (struct i2c_driver * driver);
```

## Arguments

*driver*

the driver being unregistered

## Context

can sleep

# i2c\_use\_client

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_use_client` — increments the reference count of the i2c client structure

## Synopsis

```
struct i2c_client * i2c_use_client (struct i2c_client *  
client);
```

## Arguments

*client*

the client being referenced

## Description

Each live reference to a client should be refcounted. The driver model does that automatically as part of driver binding, so that most drivers don't

## need to do this explicitly

they hold a reference until they're unbound from the device.

A pointer to the client with the incremented reference counter is returned.

## i2c\_release\_client

### LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

## Name

`i2c_release_client` — release a use of the i2c client structure

## Synopsis

```
void i2c_release_client (struct i2c_client * client);
```

## Arguments

*client*

the client being no longer referenced

## Description

Must be called when a user of a client is finished with it.

# i2c\_transfer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_transfer` — execute a single or combined I2C message

### Synopsis

```
int i2c_transfer (struct i2c_adapter * adap, struct i2c_msg *  
msgs, int num);
```

### Arguments

*adap*

Handle to I2C bus

*msgs*

One or more messages to execute before STOP is issued to terminate the operation; each message begins with a START.

*num*

Number of messages to be executed.

### Description

Returns negative errno, else the number of messages executed.

Note that there is no requirement that each message be sent to the same slave address, although that is the most common model.

# i2c\_master\_send

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_master_send` — issue a single I2C message in master transmit mode

### Synopsis

```
int i2c_master_send (const struct i2c_client * client, const
char * buf, int count);
```

### Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*buf*

Data that will be written to the slave

*count*

How many bytes to write, must be less than 64k since `msg.len` is `u16`

### Description

Returns negative `errno`, or else the number of bytes written.

# i2c\_master\_recv

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_master_recv` — issue a single I2C message in master receive mode

### Synopsis

```
int i2c_master_recv (const struct i2c_client * client, char *  
buf, int count);
```

### Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*buf*

Where to store data read from slave

*count*

How many bytes to read, must be less than 64k since `msg.len` is `u16`

### Description

Returns negative `errno`, or else the number of bytes read.

# i2c\_smbus\_read\_byte

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_smbus_read_byte` — SMBus “receive byte” protocol

### Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_read_byte (const struct i2c_client * client);
```

### Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

### Description

This executes the SMBus “receive byte” protocol, returning negative `errno` else the byte received from the device.

# i2c\_smbus\_write\_byte

## LINUX

## Name

`i2c_smbus_write_byte` — SMBus “send byte” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_write_byte (const struct i2c_client * client, u8
value);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*value*

Byte to be sent

## Description

This executes the SMBus “send byte” protocol, returning negative `errno` else zero on success.

## `i2c_smbus_read_byte_data`

**LINUX**



## Name

`i2c_smbus_read_byte_data` — SMBus “read byte” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_read_byte_data (const struct i2c_client *  
client, u8 command);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

## Description

This executes the SMBus “read byte” protocol, returning negative `errno` else a data byte received from the device.

## `i2c_smbus_write_byte_data`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2c_smbus_write_byte_data` — SMBus “write byte” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_write_byte_data (const struct i2c_client *  
client, u8 command, u8 value);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

*value*

Byte being written

## Description

This executes the SMBus “write byte” protocol, returning negative `errno` else zero on success.

## `i2c_smbus_read_word_data`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2c_smbus_read_word_data` — SMBus “read word” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_read_word_data (const struct i2c_client *
    client, u8 command);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

## Description

This executes the SMBus “read word” protocol, returning negative `errno` else a 16-bit unsigned “word” received from the device.

## `i2c_smbus_write_word_data`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2c_smbus_write_word_data` — SMBus “write word” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_write_word_data (const struct i2c_client *  
client, u8 command, u16 value);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

*value*

16-bit “word” being written

## Description

This executes the SMBus “write word” protocol, returning negative `errno` else zero on success.

## `i2c_smbus_process_call`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2c_smbus_process_call` — SMBus “process call” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_process_call (const struct i2c_client * client,  
u8 command, u16 value);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

*value*

16-bit “word” being written

## Description

This executes the SMBus “process call” protocol, returning negative `errno` else a 16-bit unsigned “word” received from the device.

## `i2c_smbus_read_block_data`

**LINUX**

## Name

`i2c_smbus_read_block_data` — SMBus “block read” protocol

## Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_read_block_data (const struct i2c_client *  
client, u8 command, u8 * values);
```

## Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

*values*

Byte array into which data will be read; big enough to hold the data returned by the slave. SMBus allows at most 32 bytes.

## Description

This executes the SMBus “block read” protocol, returning negative `errno` else the number of data bytes in the slave’s response.

Note that using this function requires that the client’s adapter support the `I2C_FUNC_SMBUS_READ_BLOCK_DATA` functionality. Not all adapter drivers support this; its emulation through I<sup>2</sup>C messaging relies on a specific mechanism (`I2C_M_RECV_LEN`) which may not be implemented.

# i2c\_smbus\_write\_block\_data

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_smbus_write_block_data` — SMBus “block write” protocol

### Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_write_block_data (const struct i2c_client *
client, u8 command, u8 length, const u8 * values);
```

### Arguments

*client*

Handle to slave device

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave

*length*

Size of data block; SMBus allows at most 32 bytes

*values*

Byte array which will be written.

### Description

This executes the SMBus “block write” protocol, returning negative `errno` else zero on success.

# i2c\_smbus\_xfer

## LINUX

Kernel Hackers Manual June 2017

### Name

`i2c_smbus_xfer` — execute SMBus protocol operations

### Synopsis

```
s32 i2c_smbus_xfer (struct i2c_adapter * adapter, u16 addr,  
unsigned short flags, char read_write, u8 command, int  
protocol, union i2c_smbus_data * data);
```

### Arguments

*adapter*

Handle to I2C bus

*addr*

Address of SMBus slave on that bus

*flags*

I2C\_CLIENT\_\* flags (usually zero or I2C\_CLIENT\_PEC)

*read\_write*

I2C\_SMBUS\_READ or I2C\_SMBUS\_WRITE

*command*

Byte interpreted by slave, for protocols which use such bytes

*protocol*

SMBus protocol operation to execute, such as I2C\_SMBUS\_PROC\_CALL



*data*

Data to be read or written

## **Description**

This executes an SMBus protocol operation, and returns a negative errno code else zero on success.

